

## FlexShares® Trust

### Statement of Additional Information

Dated March 1, 2018

This Statement of Additional Information (the “SAI”) is not a prospectus. It should be read in conjunction with the current prospectus (the “Prospectus”) for the following Funds of the FlexShares Trust (the “Trust”) as such Prospectus may be revised or supplemented from time to time:

<u>Fund</u>	<u>Ticker</u>	<u>Stock Exchange</u>
FlexShares® Ready Access Variable Income Fund	RAVI	NYSE Arca
FlexShares® Core Select Bond Fund	BNDC	NYSE Arca

The Prospectus for the Funds of the FlexShares Trust included in this SAI is dated March 1, 2018. Capitalized terms used herein that are not defined have the same meanings as in the Prospectus, unless otherwise noted. Copies of the Prospectus may be obtained without charge by visiting [www.flexshares.com](http://www.flexshares.com), writing to FlexShares ETFs, c/o Foreside Fund Services, LLC, Three Canal Plaza, Portland, Maine 04101 or calling 1-855-FLEXETF (1-855-353-9383). FlexShares® is a registered trademark of Northern Trust Investments, Inc. (“NTI” or the “Investment Adviser”).

The audited financial statements for the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund and the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund and related report of Deloitte & Touche LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, contained in the annual report to the Funds’ shareholders for the fiscal period ended October 31, 2017 are incorporated herein by reference in the section entitled “Financial Statements.” No other parts of the annual report are incorporated by reference herein. Copies of the Trust’s Annual Report may be obtained upon request and without charge, by writing to FlexShares ETFs, c/o Foreside Fund Services, LLC, Three Canal Plaza, Suite 100, Portland, ME 04101 or by calling 1-855-FLEXETF (1-855-353-9383).

An investment in a Fund is not a deposit of any bank and is not insured or guaranteed by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (“FDIC”), any other government agency or The Northern Trust Company (“TNTC”), its affiliates, subsidiaries or any other bank. An investment in a Fund involves investment risks, including possible loss of principal.

## Table of Contents

	<u>Page</u>
GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE TRUST AND THE FUNDS .....	1
ADDITIONAL INVESTMENT INFORMATION .....	1
EXCHANGE LISTING AND TRADING .....	1
INVESTMENT OBJECTIVE, STRATEGIES AND RISKS .....	2
INVESTMENT RESTRICTIONS .....	31
CONTINUOUS OFFERING .....	34
PORTFOLIO HOLDINGS .....	35
MANAGEMENT OF THE TRUST .....	37
TRUSTEES AND OFFICERS .....	37
OFFICERS OF THE TRUST .....	39
BOARD COMMITTEES .....	41
LEADERSHIP STRUCTURE AND QUALIFICATIONS OF THE BOARD OF TRUSTEES .....	42
RISK OVERSIGHT .....	43
TRUSTEE OWNERSHIP OF FUND SHARES .....	43
TRUSTEE AND OFFICER COMPENSATION .....	44
CONTROL PERSONS AND PRINCIPAL HOLDERS OF SECURITIES .....	44
CODE OF ETHICS .....	45
INVESTMENT ADVISER .....	45
PORTFOLIO MANAGERS .....	48
PROXY VOTING .....	51
ADMINISTRATOR .....	53
DISTRIBUTOR .....	53
DISTRIBUTION AND SERVICE PLAN .....	53
TRANSFER AGENT .....	53
CUSTODIAN .....	54
SECURITIES LENDING AGENT .....	54
DESCRIPTION OF SHARES .....	55
BOOK-ENTRY ONLY SYSTEM .....	57
PURCHASE AND REDEMPTION OF CREATION UNIT AGGREGATIONS .....	58
CREATION UNIT AGGREGATIONS .....	58
PURCHASE AND ISSUANCE OF CREATION UNIT AGGREGATIONS .....	58
General .....	58
Portfolio Deposit .....	58
Procedures For Creation of Creation Units .....	59
Placement of Creation Orders For The Funds .....	59

	<u>Page</u>
Acceptance of Purchase Order .....	60
Issuance of a Creation Unit .....	61
Cash Purchase Method .....	61
Purchase Transaction Fee .....	62
Redemption of Creation Units .....	62
Placement of Redemption Orders For The Funds .....	63
TAXES .....	64
FEDERAL - GENERAL INFORMATION .....	64
BACK-UP WITHHOLDING .....	66
SECTIONS 351 AND 362 .....	66
NET CAPITAL LOSS CARRYFORWARDS .....	66
EXCESS INCLUSION INCOME .....	66
TAXATION OF INCOME FROM CERTAIN FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS .....	66
SALES OF SHARES .....	67
OTHER TAXES .....	67
TAXATION OF NON-U.S. SHAREHOLDERS .....	67
REPORTING .....	67
NET ASSET VALUE .....	68
DIVIDENDS AND DISTRIBUTIONS .....	68
GENERAL POLICIES .....	68
DIVIDEND REINVESTMENT SERVICE .....	68
OTHER INFORMATION .....	68
COUNSEL .....	68
INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM .....	68
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION .....	68
FINANCIAL STATEMENTS .....	69
APPENDIX A .....	A-1
APPENDIX B .....	B-1
APPENDIX C .....	C-1

## GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE TRUST AND THE FUNDS

The Trust was formed as a Maryland Statutory Trust on May 13, 2010, originally named NT ETF Trust, and renamed FlexShares Trust as of April 12, 2011. The Trust is authorized to have multiple series or portfolios. The Trust is an open-end, management investment company, registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the “1940 Act”). The offering of the Trust’s shares is registered under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”). This SAI relates to the following funds (each, a “Fund” and collectively, the “Funds”):

FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund

FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund

The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund is a non-diversified fund and the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund is a diversified fund.

The investment objective of the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund is to seek maximum current income consistent with the preservation of capital and liquidity. The investment objective of the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund is to seek total return and preservation of capital. Each Fund is managed by NTI, a subsidiary of Northern Trust Corporation. The FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund may seek to meet its investment objective by investing indirectly through ETFs and other registered investment companies, including those that may be managed by NTI or its affiliates (together, the “Underlying Funds”).

The Funds offer and issue shares at their net asset value per share (“NAV”) only in aggregations of a specified number of shares (each, a “Creation Unit” or a “Creation Unit Aggregation”), generally in exchange for a specified basket of securities (the “Deposit Securities”), together with the deposit of a specified cash payment (the “Cash Component”). The shares of the Funds are listed and traded on the NYSE Arca, Inc., a national securities exchange (the “Listing Exchange”). Shares trade in the secondary market and elsewhere at market prices that may be at, above or below NAV. Shares are redeemable only in Creation Unit Aggregations, and, generally, in exchange for portfolio securities and a Cash Component. The number of shares of a Creation Unit of each Fund is as follows:

<b>FUND</b>	<b>NUMBER OF SHARES PER CREATION UNIT</b>
FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund	50,000
FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund	25,000

The Trust reserves the right to offer a “cash” option for creations and redemptions of shares as more fully described in the “Purchase and Redemption of Creation Unit Aggregations” section of this SAI. Shares may be issued in advance of receipt of Deposit Securities subject to various conditions including a requirement to maintain on deposit with the Trust cash at least equal to 110%, which percentage NTI may change from time to time, of the market value of the missing Deposit Securities. See the “Purchase and Redemption of Creation Unit Aggregations” section of this SAI. In each instance of cash creations or redemptions, transaction fees may be imposed that will be higher than the transaction fees associated with in-kind creations or redemptions. In all cases, such conditions and fees will be limited in accordance with the requirements of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) applicable to management investment companies offering redeemable securities.

## ADDITIONAL INVESTMENT INFORMATION

### EXCHANGE LISTING AND TRADING

A discussion of exchange listing and trading matters associated with an investment in each Fund is contained in the Prospectus in the “Shareholder Information” section. The discussion below supplements, and should be read in conjunction with, that section of the Prospectus.

Shares of each Fund are listed for trading on at least one Listing Exchange and trade throughout the day on the Listing Exchange and other secondary markets. In addition, each Fund may be traded on certain foreign exchanges. There can be no assurance that the requirements of a Listing Exchange necessary to maintain the listing of shares of any Fund will continue to be met. A Listing Exchange may, but is not required to, remove the shares of a Fund from listing if (1) following the initial twelve-month period beginning upon the commencement of trading of a Fund, there are fewer than fifty (50) record and/or beneficial holders of the Fund for thirty (30) or more consecutive trading days, (2) the “indicative optimized portfolio value” (“IOPV”) of a Fund is no longer calculated or available, or (3) any other event shall occur or condition exist that, in the opinion of the Listing Exchange, makes further dealings on the Listing Exchange inadvisable. A Listing Exchange will remove the shares of a Fund from listing and trading upon termination of the Fund.

As in the case of other publicly-traded securities, brokers' commissions on transactions will be based on negotiated commission rates at customary levels.

In order to provide additional information regarding the indicative value of shares of each Fund, a Listing Exchange disseminates every fifteen seconds, through the facilities of the Consolidated Tape Association, an updated IOPV for each Fund as calculated by an information provider or market data vendors. The Trust is not involved in or responsible for any aspect of the calculation or dissemination of the IOPVs, and makes no representation or warranty as to the accuracy of the IOPVs.

An IOPV has a securities value component and a cash component. The securities values included in an IOPV are the values of the Deposit Securities for the applicable Fund. While the IOPV reflects the current market value of the Deposit Securities required to be deposited in connection with the purchase of a Creation Unit Aggregation, it does not necessarily reflect the precise composition of the current portfolio of securities held by the applicable Fund at a particular point in time because the current portfolio of the Fund may include securities that are not a part of the Deposit Securities. Therefore, a Fund's IOPV disseminated during the Listing Exchange trading hours should not be viewed as a real time update of the Fund's NAV, which is calculated only once a day.

In addition to the securities component described in the preceding paragraph, the IOPV for each Fund includes a cash component consisting of estimated accrued interest, dividends and other income, less expenses. If applicable, the IOPV also reflects changes in currency exchange rates between the U.S. Dollar and the applicable foreign currency.

The Trust reserves the right to adjust the share price of the Funds in the future to maintain convenient trading ranges for investors. Any adjustments would be accomplished through stock splits or reverse stock splits, which would have no effect on the net assets of the applicable Fund.

## **INVESTMENT OBJECTIVE, STRATEGIES AND RISKS**

The following supplements the information contained in the Prospectus concerning the investment objective, strategies and risks of the Funds.

The investment objective of each Fund may be changed without shareholder approval. Except as expressly noted below, each Fund's investment strategies may be changed without shareholder approval. In addition to the instruments discussed below and in the Prospectus, each Fund may purchase other types of financial instruments, however designated, whose investment and credit quality characteristics are determined by NTI to be substantially similar to those of any other investment otherwise permitted by a Fund's investment strategies. Each Fund is an actively managed exchange-traded fund ("ETF") and does not seek to replicate the performance of a specified index.

The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund seeks to achieve its investment objective by investing under normal circumstances at least 80% of its total assets in a non-diversified portfolio of fixed-income instruments including bonds, debt securities and other similar instruments issued by U.S. and non-U.S. public and private sector entities. Such issuers include, without limitation, U.S. and non-U.S. governments and their agencies, instrumentalities or sponsored enterprises, U.S. state and local governments and U.S. and non-U.S. private-sector entities, such as corporations and banks.

The FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund seeks to achieve its investment objective by investing under normal circumstances at least 80% of its net assets in U.S. dollar denominated investment-grade fixed-income securities either directly or indirectly through Underlying Funds. The Fund primarily invests in fixed-rate securities of varying maturities, including bonds, debt securities and other similar instruments issued by U.S. public and U.S. and non-U.S. private sector entities. Such issuers include, without limitation, U.S. governments and their agencies, instrumentalities or sponsored enterprises, and U.S. and non-U.S. private-sector entities, such as corporations and banks.

In the case of the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund, because the Fund may significantly invest in Underlying Funds, the risks of investment in particular types of securities, instruments and portfolio management techniques discussed below may be borne by the Fund through its investment in the Underlying Funds, in addition to the risks associated with those securities, instruments and portfolio management techniques if the Fund invested in them or engaged in them directly.

**ASSET-BACKED (INCLUDING MORTGAGE-BACKED) SECURITIES.** Each Fund may purchase asset-backed securities, which are securities backed by mortgages, installment contracts, credit card receivables, municipal securities or other financial assets. Each Fund will invest no more than 10% of its total assets in non-agency asset-backed securities (including mortgage-backed securities). The investment characteristics of asset-backed securities differ from those of traditional fixed-income securities. Asset-backed securities represent interests in "pools" of assets in which payments of both interest and principal on the securities are made periodically, thus in effect "passing through" such payments made by the individual borrowers on the assets

that underlie the securities, net of any fees paid to the issuer or guarantor of the securities. The average life of asset-backed securities varies with the maturities of the underlying instruments, and the average life of a mortgage-backed instrument, in particular, is likely to be substantially less than the original maturity of the mortgage pools underlying the securities as a result of mortgage prepayments. For this and other reasons, an asset-backed security normally is subject to both call risk and extension risk, and an asset-backed security's stated maturity may be shortened. In addition, the security's total return may be difficult to predict precisely. These differences can result in significantly greater price and yield volatility than is the case with traditional fixed-income securities.

If an asset-backed security is purchased at a premium, a prepayment rate that is faster than expected will reduce yield to maturity, while a prepayment rate that is slower than expected will have the opposite effect of increasing yield to maturity. Conversely, if an asset-backed security is purchased at a discount, faster than expected prepayments will increase, while slower than expected prepayments will decrease, yield to maturity. In calculating the Fund's average weighted maturity, the maturity of asset-backed securities will be based on estimates of average life. Prepayments on asset-backed securities generally increase with falling interest rates and decrease with rising interest rates; furthermore, prepayment rates are influenced by a variety of economic and social factors. In general, the collateral supporting non-mortgage asset-backed securities is of shorter maturity than mortgage loans and is less likely to experience substantial prepayments.

Asset-backed securities acquired by a Fund may include collateralized mortgage obligations ("CMOs"). CMOs provide the holder with a specified interest in the cash flow of a pool of underlying mortgages or other mortgage-backed securities. Issuers of CMOs ordinarily elect to be taxed as pass-through entities known as real estate mortgage investment conduits ("REMICs"). CMOs are issued in multiple classes, each with a specified fixed or floating interest rate and a final distribution date. The relative payment rights of the various CMO classes may be structured in a variety of ways, and normally are considered derivative securities. In some cases CMOs may be highly leveraged and very speculative.

There are a number of important differences among the agencies, instrumentalities and sponsored enterprises of the U.S. government that issue mortgage-related securities and among the securities that they issue. Mortgage-related securities guaranteed by the Government National Mortgage Association ("Ginnie Mae") include Ginnie Mae Mortgage Pass-Through Certificates, which are guaranteed as to the timely payment of principal and interest by Ginnie Mae and backed by the full faith and credit of the United States, which means that the U.S. government guarantees that the interest and principal will be paid when due. Ginnie Mae is a wholly-owned U.S. government corporation within the Department of Housing and Urban Development. Ginnie Mae certificates also are supported by the authority of Ginnie Mae to borrow funds from the U.S. Treasury to make payments under its guarantee.

Mortgage-backed securities issued by the Federal National Mortgage Association ("Fannie Mae") include Fannie Mae Guaranteed Mortgage Pass-Through Certificates, which are solely the obligations of Fannie Mae and are not backed by or entitled to the full faith and credit of the United States, except as described below, but are supported by the right of the issuer to borrow from the U.S. Treasury. Fannie Mae is a stockholder-owned corporation chartered under an Act of the U.S. Congress. Fannie Mae certificates are guaranteed as to timely payment of the principal and interest by Fannie Mae. Mortgage-related securities issued by the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation ("Freddie Mac") include Freddie Mac Mortgage Participation Certificates. Freddie Mac is a corporate instrumentality of the United States, created pursuant to an Act of Congress. Freddie Mac certificates are not guaranteed by the United States or by any Federal Home Loan Banks and do not constitute a debt or obligation of the United States or of any Federal Home Loan Bank. Freddie Mac certificates entitle the holder to timely payment of interest, which is guaranteed by Freddie Mac. Freddie Mac guarantees either ultimate collection or timely payment of all principal payments on the underlying mortgage loans. When Freddie Mac does not guarantee timely payment of principal, Freddie Mac may remit the amount due on account of its guarantee of ultimate payment of principal after default.

From time to time, proposals have been introduced before Congress for the purpose of restricting or eliminating federal sponsorship of Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac. The Trust cannot predict what legislation, if any, may be proposed in the future in Congress with regard to such sponsorship or which proposals, if any, might be enacted. Such proposals, if enacted, might materially and adversely affect the availability of government guaranteed mortgage-backed securities and the Fund's liquidity and value.

There is risk that the U.S. government will not provide financial support to its agencies, authorities, instrumentalities or sponsored enterprises. The Fund may purchase U.S. government securities that are not backed by the full faith and credit of the United States, such as those issued by Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac. The maximum potential liability of the issuers of some U.S. government securities held by the Fund may greatly exceed their current resources, including their legal right to support from the U.S. Treasury. It is possible that these issuers will not have the funds to meet their payment obligations in the future.

The extreme and unprecedented volatility and disruption that impacted the capital and credit markets during late 2008 and into 2009 have led to increased market concerns about Freddie Mac's and Fannie Mae's ability to withstand future credit losses associated with securities held in their investment portfolios, and on which they provide guarantees, without the direct support of the federal government. On September 7, 2008, both Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae were placed under the conservatorship of the Federal Housing Finance Agency ("FHFA"). Under the plan of conservatorship, the FHFA has assumed control of, and generally has the power to direct, the operations of Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae, and is empowered to exercise all powers collectively held by their respective shareholders, directors and officers, including the power to: (1) take over the assets of and operate Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae with all the powers of the shareholders, the directors, and the officers of Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae and conduct all business of Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae; (2) collect all obligations and money due to Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae; (3) perform all functions of Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae that are consistent with the conservator's appointment; (4) preserve and conserve the assets and property of Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae; and (5) contract for assistance in fulfilling any function, activity, action or duty of the conservator. In addition, in connection with the actions taken by the FHFA, the U.S. Treasury Department (the "Treasury") entered into certain preferred stock purchase agreements with each of Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae, which established the Treasury as the holder of a new class of senior preferred stock in each of Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae, which stock was issued in connection with financial contributions from the Treasury to Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae.

The conditions attached to the financial contribution made by the Treasury to Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae and the issuance of this senior preferred stock place significant restrictions on the activities of Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae. Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae must obtain the consent of the Treasury to among other things: (i) make any payment to purchase or redeem its capital stock or pay any dividend other than in respect of the senior preferred stock issued to the Treasury, (ii) issue capital stock of any kind, (iii) terminate the conservatorship of the FHFA except in connection with a receivership, or (iv) increase its debt beyond certain specified levels. In addition, significant restrictions were placed on the maximum size of each of Freddie Mac's and Fannie Mae's respective portfolios of mortgages and mortgage-backed securities, and the purchase agreements entered into by Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae provide that the maximum size of their portfolios of these assets must decrease by a specified percentage each year. The future status and role of Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae could be impacted by (among other things) the actions taken and restrictions placed on Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae by the FHFA in its role as conservator; the restrictions placed on Freddie Mac's and Fannie Mae's operations and activities as a result of the senior preferred stock investment made by the Treasury; market responses to developments at Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae; and future legislative and regulatory action that alters the operations, ownership, structure and/or mission of these institutions, each of which may, in turn, impact the value of, and cash flows on, any mortgage-backed securities guaranteed by Freddie Mac and Fannie Mae, including any such mortgage-backed securities held by the Fund.

There is a heightened risk that the receivables and loans underlying the asset-backed securities purchased by the Fund may suffer greater levels of default than has been historically experienced.

In addition, privately issued mortgage-backed securities (as well as other types of asset-backed securities) do not have the backing of any U.S. government agency, instrumentality or sponsored enterprise. The seller or servicer of the underlying mortgage obligations generally will make representations and warranties to certificate-holders as to certain characteristics of the mortgage loans and as to the accuracy of certain information furnished to the trustee in respect of each such mortgage loan. Upon a breach of any representation or warranty that materially and adversely affects the interests of the related certificate-holders in a mortgage loan, the seller or servicer generally will be obligated either to cure the breach in all material respects, to repurchase the mortgage loan or, if the related agreement so provides, to substitute in its place a mortgage loan pursuant to the conditions set forth therein. Such a repurchase or substitution obligation may constitute the sole remedy available to the related certificate-holders or the trustee for the material breach of any such representation or warranty by the seller or servicer. To provide additional investor protection, some mortgage-backed securities may have various types of credit enhancements, reserve funds, subordination provisions or other features. Non-mortgage asset-backed securities involve certain risks that are not presented by mortgage-backed securities. Primarily, these securities do not have the benefit of the same security interest in the underlying collateral. Credit card receivables generally are unsecured and the debtors are entitled to the protection of a number of state and federal consumer credit laws, many of which have given debtors the right to set off certain amounts owed on the credit cards, thereby reducing the balance due. Most issuers of automobile receivables permit the servicers to retain possession of the underlying obligations. If the servicer were to sell these obligations to another party, there is a risk that the purchaser would acquire an interest superior to that of the holders of the related automobile receivables. In addition, because of the large number of vehicles involved in a typical issuance and technical requirements under state laws, the trustee for the holders of the automobile receivables may not have an effective security interest in all of the obligations backing such receivables. Therefore, there is a possibility that recoveries on repossessed collateral may not, in some cases, be able to support payments on these securities.

Asset-backed securities acquired by the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund may also include collateralized debt obligations (“CDOs”). CDOs include collateralized bond obligations (“CBOs”) and collateralized loan obligations (“CLOs”) and other similarly structured securities.

A CBO is a trust or other special purpose entity (“SPE”) that is typically backed by a diversified pool of fixed-income securities (which may include high risk, below investment grade securities). A CLO is a trust or other SPE that is typically collateralized by a pool of loans, which may include, among others, domestic and non-U.S. senior secured loans, senior unsecured loans, and subordinate corporate loans, including loans that may be rated below investment grade or equivalent unrated loans. Investments in CLOs organized outside of the United States may not be deemed to be foreign securities if a CLO is collateralized by a pool of loans, a substantial portion of which are U.S. loans. Although certain CDOs may receive credit enhancement in the form of a senior-subordinate structure, over-collateralization or bond insurance, such enhancement may not always be present and may fail to protect the Ready Access Variable Income Fund against the risk of loss on default of the collateral. Certain CDOs may use derivatives contracts to create “synthetic” exposure to assets rather than holding such assets directly, which entails the risks of derivative instruments described elsewhere in this SAI. CDOs may charge management fees and administrative expenses, which are in addition to those of the Fund.

For both CBOs and CLOs, the cash flows from the SPE are split into two or more portions, called tranches, varying in risk and yield. The riskiest portion is the “equity” tranche, which bears the first loss from defaults from the bonds or loans in the SPE and serves to protect the other, more senior tranches from default (though such protection is not complete). Since it is partially protected from defaults, a senior tranche from a CBO or CLO typically has higher ratings and lower yields than its underlying securities, and may be rated investment grade. Despite the protection from the equity tranche, CBO or CLO tranches can experience substantial losses due to actual defaults, increased sensitivity to defaults due to collateral default and disappearance of protecting tranches, market anticipation of defaults, as well as investor aversion to CBO or CLO securities as a class. Interest on certain tranches of a CDO may be paid in kind (paid in the form of obligations of the same type rather than cash), which involves continued exposure to default risk with respect to such payments.

The risks of an investment in a CDO depend largely on the type of the collateral securities and the class of the CDO in which the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund invests. Normally, CBOs, CLOs and other CDOs are privately offered and sold, and thus are not registered under the securities laws. As a result, investments in CDOs may be characterized by the Fund as illiquid securities. However, an active dealer market may exist for CDOs, allowing a CDO to qualify for Rule 144A transactions. In addition to the normal risks associated with fixed-income securities and asset-backed securities generally discussed elsewhere in this SAI, CDOs carry additional risks including, but not limited to: (i) the possibility that distributions from collateral securities will not be adequate to make interest or other payments; (ii) the quality of the collateral may decline in value or default; (iii) the Fund may invest in tranches of CDOs that are subordinate to other tranches; (iv) the complex structure of the security may not be fully understood at the time of investment and may produce disputes with the issuer or unexpected investment results; and (v) the CDO’s manager may perform poorly or default.

To the extent consistent with its investment objective and strategies, the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund may invest in a category of pass-through securities backed by pools of mortgages and issued by Fannie Mae, Freddie Mac, or Ginnie Mae. In the basic mortgage-backed pass-through structure, mortgages with similar issuer, term and coupon characteristics are collected and aggregated into a “pool” consisting of multiple mortgage loans. The pool is assigned a CUSIP number and undivided interests in the pool are traded and sold as pass-through securities.

An investment in a specific pool of pass-through securities requires an analysis of the specific prepayment risk of mortgages within the covered pool (since mortgagors typically have the option to prepay their loans). The level of prepayments on a pool of mortgage securities is difficult to predict and can impact the subsequent cash flows and value of the mortgage pool. In addition, when trading specific mortgage pools, precise execution, delivery and settlement arrangements must be negotiated for each transaction.

The FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund seeks to obtain exposure to U.S. agency mortgage-backed pass-through securities, in whole or in part, through the use of TBA Transactions. “TBA” refers to a commonly used mechanism for the forward settlement of U.S. agency mortgage-backed pass-through securities, and not to a separate type of mortgage-back security. Most transactions in fixed-rate mortgage-backed pass-through securities occur through the use of TBA Transactions. TBA Transactions generally are conducted in accordance with widely-accepted guidelines, which establish commonly observed terms and conditions for execution, settlement and delivery. In a TBA Transaction, the buyer and seller decide on general trade parameters, such as agency, settlement date, par amount and price. The actual pools delivered generally are determined two days prior to settlement date. The Fund may use TBA transactions in several ways. For example, the Fund may regularly enter into TBA agreements and “roll over” such agreements prior to the settlement date stipulated in such agreements. This type of TBA transaction is sometimes



known as a “TBA Roll.” In a TBA Roll, the Fund generally will sell the obligation to purchase the pools stipulated in the TBA Agreement prior to the stipulated settlement date and will enter into a new TBA agreement for future delivery of pools of mortgage-backed pass-through securities. In addition, the Fund may enter into TBA agreements and settle such transactions on the stipulated settlement date by accepting actual receipt or delivery of the pools of mortgage-backed securities stipulated in the TBA agreement. The Fund is not required to use TBA Transactions to gain exposure to mortgage pools, and may choose to purchase those interests in any manner believed by the Investment Adviser to be in the best interest of the Fund. The Fund’s use of TBA rolls may cause the Fund to experience higher portfolio turnover, higher transaction costs and to pay higher capital gain distributions to shareholders (which may be taxable) than other FlexShares Funds that do not use TBA rolls.

The FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund intends to invest cash pending settlement of any TBA Transactions in money market instruments, repurchase agreements or other high-quality, liquid short-term instruments, which may include money market funds advised by the Investment Adviser. The Fund will assume its pro rata share of fees and expenses of any money market fund that it may invest in, in addition to the each Fund’s own fees and expenses. It is possible that the Fund could lose money by investing in a money market fund. Investments in money market funds have traditionally not and currently are not federally insured.

Default by or bankruptcy of a counterparty to a TBA Transaction would expose the Fund to possible losses because of adverse market action, expenses or delays in connection with the purchase or sale of the pools of mortgage pass-through securities specified in the TBA Transaction. To minimize this risk, the Fund will enter into TBA Transactions only with established counterparties (such as major broker-dealers) and the Investment Adviser will monitor the creditworthiness of such counterparties. In addition, the Fund may accept assignments of TBA Transactions from Authorized Participants from time to time.

**BANK CAPITAL SECURITIES.** Each Fund may invest in bank capital securities. Bank capital securities are issued by banks to help fulfill their regulatory capital requirements. There are two common types of bank capital: Tier I and Tier II. Bank capital is generally, but not always, of investment grade quality. Tier I securities often take the form of trust preferred securities. Tier II securities are commonly thought of as hybrids of debt and preferred stock, are often perpetual (with no maturity date), callable and, under certain conditions, allow for the issuer bank to withhold payment of interest until a later date.

**BONDS.** Each Fund may invest in bonds. A bond is an interest-bearing security issued by a company, governmental unit or, in some cases, a non-U.S. public or private entity. The issuer of a bond has a contractual obligation to pay interest at a stated rate on specific dates and to repay principal (the bond’s face value) periodically or on a specified maturity date. An issuer may have the right to redeem or “call” a bond before maturity, in which case the investor may have to reinvest the proceeds at lower market rates. Most bonds bear interest income at a “coupon” rate that is fixed for the life of the bond. The value of a fixed rate bond usually rises when market interest rates fall, and falls when market interest rates rise. Accordingly, a fixed rate bond’s yield (income as a percent of the bond’s current value) may differ from its coupon rate as its value rises or falls. Other types of bonds bear income at an interest rate that is adjusted periodically. Because of their adjustable interest rates, the value of “floating-rate” or “variable-rate” bonds fluctuates much less in response to market interest rate movements than the value of fixed rate bonds. The Funds may treat some of these bonds as having a shorter maturity for purposes of calculating the weighted average maturity of its investment portfolio. Bonds may be senior or subordinated obligations. Senior obligations generally have the first claim on a corporation’s earnings and assets and, in the event of liquidation, are paid before subordinated obligations. Bonds may be unsecured (backed only by the issuer’s general creditworthiness) or secured (also backed by specified collateral).

**CALCULATION OF PORTFOLIO TURNOVER RATE.** The portfolio turnover rate for the Funds is calculated by dividing the lesser of purchases or sales of portfolio investments for the reporting period by the monthly average value of the portfolio investments owned during the reporting period. The calculation excludes all securities whose maturities or expiration dates at the time of acquisition are one year or less. Portfolio turnover may vary greatly from year to year as well as within a particular year, and may be affected by changes in the holdings of specific issuers, changes in country and currency weightings, cash requirements for redemption of shares and by requirements that enable the Funds to receive favorable tax treatment.

Each Fund is not restricted by policy with regard to portfolio turnover and will make changes in its investment portfolio from time to time as business and economic conditions as well as market prices may dictate.

**COMMERCIAL PAPER, BANKERS’ ACCEPTANCES, CERTIFICATES OF DEPOSIT, TIME DEPOSITS AND BANK NOTES.** Each Fund may invest in commercial paper, bankers’ acceptances, certificates of deposit, time deposits and bank notes. Commercial paper represents short-term unsecured promissory notes issued in bearer form by banks or bank holding companies, corporations and finance companies. Certificates of deposit are negotiable certificates issued against funds deposited in a commercial bank for a definite period of time and earning a specified return. Bankers’ acceptances are negotiable drafts or bills of exchange, normally drawn by an importer or exporter to pay for specific merchandise, which are “accepted” by a bank, meaning, in effect, that the bank unconditionally agrees to pay the face value of the instrument on maturity. Fixed time deposits

are bank obligations payable at a stated maturity date and bearing interest at a fixed rate. Fixed time deposits may be withdrawn on demand by the investor, but may be subject to early withdrawal penalties that vary depending upon market conditions and the remaining maturity of the obligation. There are no contractual restrictions on the right to transfer a beneficial interest in a fixed time deposit to a third party. Bank notes generally rank junior to deposit liabilities of banks and pari passu with other senior, unsecured obligations of the bank. Bank notes are classified as “other borrowings” on a bank’s balance sheet, while deposit notes and certificates of deposit are classified as deposits. Bank notes are not insured by the FDIC or any other insurer. Deposit notes are insured by the FDIC only to the extent of \$250,000 per depositor per bank.

Each Fund may invest a portion of its assets in the obligations of foreign banks and foreign branches of domestic banks. Such obligations include Eurodollar Certificates of Deposit (“ECDs”), which are U.S. dollar-denominated certificates of deposit issued by offices of foreign and domestic banks located outside the United States; Eurodollar Time Deposits (“ETDs”), which are U.S. dollar-denominated deposits in a foreign branch of a U.S. bank or a foreign bank; Canadian Time Deposits (“CTDs”), which are essentially the same as ETDs except they are issued by Canadian offices of major Canadian banks; Schedule Bs, which are obligations issued by Canadian branches of foreign or domestic banks; Yankee Certificates of Deposit (“Yankee CDs”), which are U.S. dollar-denominated certificates of deposit issued by a U.S. branch of a foreign bank and held in the United States; and Yankee Bankers’ Acceptances (“Yankee BAs”), which are U.S. dollar denominated bankers’ acceptances issued by a U.S. branch of a foreign bank and held in the United States.

Commercial paper is generally unsecured and usually discounted from its value at maturity. The value of commercial paper may be affected by changes in the credit rating or financial condition of the issuing entities and will tend to fall when interest rates rise and rise when interest rates fall. Commercial paper purchased by the Funds may include asset-backed commercial paper. Asset-backed commercial paper is issued by a special purpose entity that is organized to issue the commercial paper and to purchase trade receivables or other financial assets. The credit quality of asset-backed commercial paper depends primarily on the quality of these assets and the level of any additional credit support. The repayment of asset-backed commercial paper depends primarily on the cash collections received from such an issuer’s underlying asset portfolio and the issuer’s ability to issue new asset-backed commercial paper. Investments in commercial paper are subject to the risk that the issuer cannot issue enough new commercial paper to satisfy its obligations with respect to its outstanding commercial paper, also known as rollover risk. Commercial paper is also susceptible to changes in the issuer’s financial condition or credit quality. In addition, under certain circumstances, commercial paper may become illiquid or may suffer from reduced credit quality.

**CUSTODIAL RECEIPTS FOR TREASURY SECURITIES.** To the extent consistent with its investment objective and strategies, each Fund may acquire U.S. government obligations and their unmatured interest coupons that have been separated (“stripped”) by their holder, typically a custodian bank or investment brokerage firm. Having separated the interest coupons from the underlying principal of the U.S. government obligations, the holder will resell the stripped securities in custodial receipt programs with a number of different names, including “Treasury Income Growth Receipts” (“TIGRs”) and “Certificate of Accrual on Treasury Securities” (“CATS”). The stripped coupons are sold separately from the underlying principal, which usually is sold at a deep discount because the buyer receives only the right to receive a future fixed payment on the security and does not receive any rights to periodic interest (cash) payments. The underlying U.S. Treasury bonds and notes themselves are held in book-entry form at the Federal Reserve Bank or, in the case of bearer securities (i.e., unregistered securities which are ostensibly owned by the bearer or holder), in trust on behalf of the owners. Counsel to the underwriters of these certificates or other evidences of ownership of U.S. Treasury securities have stated that, in their opinion, purchasers of the stripped securities most likely will be deemed the beneficial holders of the underlying U.S. government obligations for federal tax purposes. The Trust is unaware of any binding legislative, judicial or administrative authority on this issue.

**CYBER SECURITY ISSUES.** With the increased use of the Internet and because information technology (“IT”) systems and digital data underlie most of the Funds’ operations, the Funds and the Adviser, the Administrator, the Transfer Agent, the Distributor, Authorized Participants, and the Funds’ other service providers and the vendors of each (collectively “Service Providers”) are exposed to the risk that their operations and data may be compromised as a result of internal and external cyber-failures, breaches or attacks (“Cyber Risk”). This could occur as a result of malicious or criminal cyber-attacks. Cyber-attacks include actions taken to: (i) steal or corrupt data maintained online or digitally, (ii) gain unauthorized access to or release confidential information, (iii) shut down a Fund or Service Provider website through denial-of-service attacks, or (iv) otherwise disrupt normal business operations. However, events arising from human error, faulty or inadequately implemented policies and procedures or other systems failures unrelated to any external cyber-threat may have effects similar to those caused by deliberate cyber-attacks.

Successful cyber-attacks or other cyber-failures or events affecting a Fund or its Service Providers may adversely impact the Fund or its shareholders or cause your investment in the Fund to lose value. For instance, they may impact a Fund’s ability to calculate its NAV, cause the release of confidential Fund information, impede trading, or cause reputational damage. They could

also subject the Funds or its Service Providers to regulatory fines, penalties or financial losses, reimbursement or other compensation costs, and/or additional compliance costs. Insurance protection and contractual indemnification provisions may not be available or may be insufficient to cover these losses. The Funds or its Service Providers may also incur significant costs to manage and control Cyber Risk.

Cyber Risks are also present for issuers of securities or other instruments in which the Funds invest, which could result in material adverse consequences for such issuers, and may cause the Funds' investment in such issuers to lose value.

While the Investment Adviser, Service Providers or Authorized Participants may have established business continuity plans and risk management systems to prevent such cyber attacks, there are inherent limitations in such plans and systems, including the possibility that certain risks have not been identified or that cyber attacks may be highly sophisticated. The Funds and their shareholders could be negatively impacted as a result.

**EXCHANGE-TRADED NOTES.** Each Fund may invest in exchange-traded notes. ETNs are debt obligations of investment banks that are traded on exchanges and the returns of which are linked to the performance of market indexes. In addition to trading ETNs on exchanges, investors may redeem ETNs directly with the issuer on a weekly basis, typically in a minimum amount of 50,000 units, or hold the ETNs until maturity. ETNs may be riskier than ordinary debt securities and may have no principal protection. The Funds' investment in an ETN may be influenced by many unpredictable factors, including highly volatile commodities prices, changes in supply and demand relationships, weather, agriculture, trade, changes in interest rates, and monetary and other governmental policies, action and inaction. Investing in ETNs is not equivalent to investing directly in index components or the relevant index itself. Because ETNs are debt securities, they possess credit risk; if the issuer has financial difficulties or goes bankrupt, the investor may not receive the return it was promised.

**FIXED INCOME SECURITIES.** The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund seeks to achieve its investment objective by investing under normal circumstances at least 80% of its total assets in a non-diversified portfolio of fixed-income instruments including bonds, debt securities and other similar instruments issued by U.S. and non-U.S. public and private sector entities. The FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund seeks to achieve its investment objective by investing under normal circumstances at least 80% of its net assets in U.S. dollar denominated investment-grade fixed-income securities either directly or indirectly through Underlying Funds. The FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund primarily invests in fixed rate securities of varying maturities, including bonds, debt securities and other similar instruments issued by U.S. public and U.S. and non-U.S. private sector entities. Fixed income securities, including corporate debt obligations, generally expose a Fund to the following types of risk: (1) interest rate risk (the potential for fluctuations in bond prices due to changing interest rates); (2) income risk (the potential for a decline in a Fund's income due to falling market interest rates); (3) credit risk (the possibility that a bond issuer will fail to make timely payments of either interest or principal to a Fund); (4) prepayment risk or call risk (the likelihood that, during periods of falling interest rates, securities with high stated interest rates will be prepaid, or "called" prior to maturity, requiring a Fund to invest the proceeds at generally lower interest rates); and (5) extension risk (the likelihood that as interest rates increase, slower than expected principal payments may extend the average life of fixed income securities, which will have the effect of locking in a below-market interest rate, increasing the security's duration and reducing the value of the security).

In periods of declining interest rates, the yield (income from a fixed income security held by a Fund over a stated period of time) of a fixed income security may tend to be higher than prevailing market rates, and in periods of rising interest rates, the yield of a fixed income security may tend to be lower than prevailing market rates. In addition, when interest rates are falling, the inflow of net new money to a Fund will likely be invested in portfolio instruments producing lower yields than the balance of a Fund's portfolio, thereby reducing the yield of a Fund. In periods of rising interest rates, the opposite can be true. The NAV of a Fund can generally be expected to change as general levels of interest rates fluctuate. The value of fixed income securities in a Fund's portfolio generally varies inversely with changes in interest rates. Prices of fixed income securities with longer effective maturities are more sensitive to interest rate changes than those with shorter effective maturities.

Corporate debt obligations generally offer less current yield than securities of lower quality, but lower-quality securities generally have less liquidity, greater credit and market risk, and as a result, more price volatility.

Conditions in the U.S. and many foreign economies have resulted, and may continue to result, in fixed income instruments experiencing unusual liquidity issues, increased price volatility and, in some cases, credit downgrades and increased likelihood of default. These events have reduced the willingness and ability of some lenders to extend credit, and have made it more difficult for borrowers to obtain financing on attractive terms, if at all. As a result, the values of many types of securities have been reduced. In addition, global economies and financial markets are becoming increasingly interconnected, which increases the possibilities that conditions in one country or region might adversely impact issuers in a different country or region. The severity or duration of adverse economic conditions may also be affected by policy changes made by governments or quasi-governmental organizations. In addition, political events within the U.S. and abroad, such as the U.S. government's recent inability

to agree on a long-term budget and deficit reduction plan, the federal government shutdown and threats to not increase the federal government's debt limit, may affect investor and consumer confidence and may adversely impact financial markets and the broader economy, perhaps suddenly and to a significant degree. High public debt in the U.S. and other countries creates ongoing systemic and market risks and policymaking uncertainty.

**FOREIGN CURRENCY TRANSACTIONS.** The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund may engage in forward foreign currency transactions for hedging purposes in order to protect against uncertainty in the level of future foreign currency exchange rates, to facilitate local settlements or to protect against currency exposure in connection with its distributions to shareholders. The Fund, however, does not expect to engage in currency transactions for speculative purposes (e.g., for potential income or capital gain).

Forward foreign currency exchange contracts involve an obligation to purchase or sell a specified currency at a future date at a price set at the time of the contract. Forward currency contracts do not eliminate fluctuations in the values of portfolio securities, but rather allow the Fund to establish a rate of exchange for a future point in time.

When entering into a contract for the purchase or sale of a security, the Fund may enter into a forward foreign currency exchange contract for the amount of the purchase or sale price to protect against variations, between the date the security is purchased or sold and the date on which payment is made or received, in the value of the foreign currency relative to the U.S. dollar or other foreign currency.

The Fund may use non-deliverable forward currency contracts ("NDFs"). NDFs are cash-settled, short-term forward contracts that may be thinly traded or are denominated in non-convertible foreign currency, where the profit or loss at the time of settlement date is calculated by taking the difference between the agreed upon exchange rate and the spot rate at the time of settlement, for an agreed upon notional amount of funds. All NDFs have a fixing date and a settlement date. The fixing date is the date at which the difference between the prevailing market exchange rate and the agreed upon exchange rate is calculated. The settlement date is the date by which the payment of the difference is due to the party receiving payment. NDFs are commonly quoted for time periods ranging from one month to up to two years, and are normally quoted and settled in U.S. dollars. They are often used to gain exposure to and/or hedge exposure to foreign currencies that are not internationally traded.

Foreign currency forward contracts and NDFs are subject to regulation under The Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act ("Dodd-Frank Act") in the U.S. and under comparable regimes in Europe, Asia and other non-U.S. jurisdictions. Physically-settled forwards between eligible contract participants, such as the Fund, are generally subject to lighter regulation in the U.S. than NDFs and cash-settled foreign currency forward contracts. Under the Dodd-Frank Act, NDFs are regulated as swaps and are subject to rules requiring central clearing and mandatory trading on an exchange or facility that is regulated by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission ("CFTC"). NDFs are traded in the over-the-counter market are subject to margin requirements that are expected to be finalized over the next year or two.

With respect to any forward foreign currency contract, it generally will not be possible to match precisely the amount covered by that contract and the value of the securities involved due to the changes in the values of such securities resulting from market movements between the date the forward contract is entered into and the date it matures. In addition, while forward contracts may offer protection from losses resulting from declines or appreciation in the value of a particular foreign currency, they also limit potential gains, which might result from changes in the value of such currency. The Fund also may incur costs in connection with forward foreign currency exchange contracts and conversions of foreign currencies and U.S. dollars.

Liquid assets equal to the amount of the Fund's assets that could be required to consummate forward contracts will be segregated except to the extent the contracts are otherwise "covered." The segregated assets will be valued at market or fair value. If the market or fair value of such assets declines, additional liquid assets will be segregated daily so that the value of the segregated assets will equal the amount of such commitments by the Fund. A forward contract to sell a foreign currency is "covered" if the Fund owns the currency (or securities denominated in the currency) underlying the contract, or holds a forward contract (or call option) permitting the Fund to buy the same currency at a price that is (i) no higher than the Fund's price to sell the currency or (ii) greater than the Fund's price to sell the currency provided the Fund segregates liquid assets in the amount of the difference. A forward contract to buy a foreign currency is "covered" if the Fund holds a forward contract (or call option) permitting the Fund to sell the same currency at a price that is (i) as high as or higher than the Fund's price to buy the currency or (ii) lower than the Fund's price to buy the currency provided the Fund segregates liquid assets in the amount of the difference.

As a result of regulatory requirements under the 1940 Act, the Fund is required to maintain an amount of liquid assets, accrued on a daily basis, having an aggregate value at least equal to the value of the Fund's obligations under the foreign currency forward contract or NDF. To the extent that foreign currency forward contracts are settled on a physical basis, the Fund will generally be required to maintain an amount of liquid assets equal to the notional value of the contract. In connection with NDFs

and cash-settled foreign currency forward contracts, on the other hand, which are performed on a net basis, with the Fund receiving or paying only the net amount of a specified exchange rate, the Fund will generally maintain liquid assets, accrued daily, equal to the accrued excess, if any, of the Fund's obligations over those of its counterparty under the contract. Accordingly, reliance by the Fund on physically-settled foreign currency forward contracts may adversely impact investors by requiring the Fund to set aside a greater amount of liquid assets than would generally be required if the Fund were relying on cash-settled foreign currency forward contracts or NDFs.

Foreign currency transactions involve a significant degree of risk and the markets in which foreign currency transactions are effected are highly volatile, highly specialized and highly technical. Significant changes, including changes in liquidity and prices, can occur in such markets within very short periods of time, often within minutes. Foreign currency trading risks include, but are not limited to, exchange rate risk, counterparty risk, maturity gap, interest rate risk, and potential interference by foreign governments through regulation of local exchange markets, foreign investment or particular transactions in non-U.S. currency. If NTI utilizes foreign currency transactions at an inappropriate time or judges market conditions, trends or correlations incorrectly, foreign currency transactions may not serve their intended purpose and may lower the Fund's return. The Fund could experience losses if the value of its currency forwards, options or futures positions were poorly correlated with its other investments or if it could not close out its positions because of an illiquid market. In addition, the Fund could incur transaction costs, including trading commissions, in connection with certain non-U.S. currency transactions.

**FOREIGN INVESTMENTS – GENERAL.** The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund may invest its assets without limit in foreign fixed-income securities. The Fund also may invest in U.S. dollar-denominated obligations issued or guaranteed by one or more foreign governments or any of their political subdivisions, agencies, instrumentalities or sponsored enterprises, as well as other foreign issuers. These obligations may be issued by supranational entities, including international organizations (such as the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (also known as the World Bank)) and international banking institutions and related government agencies. The FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund may invest in U.S.-registered U.S. dollar-denominated bonds of non-U.S. corporate issuers. The Fund also may invest in U.S. dollar-denominated bonds of non-U.S. corporate issuers offered pursuant to Rule 144A under the Securities Act of 1933, with registration rights.

Investment in foreign securities involves special risks. These include market risk, interest rate risk and the risks of investing in securities of foreign issuers and of companies whose securities are principally traded outside the United States on foreign exchanges or foreign over-the-counter markets and in investments denominated in foreign currencies. Market risk involves the possibility that security prices will decline over short or even extended periods. The markets tend to be cyclical, with periods of generally rising prices and periods of generally declining prices. These cycles will affect the value of the Fund to the extent that it invests in foreign securities. In addition, the performance of investments in securities denominated in a foreign currency will depend on the strength of the foreign currency against the U.S. dollar and the interest rate environment in the country issuing the currency. Generally, the prices of bonds and debt securities fluctuate inversely with interest rate changes. Absent other events, which could otherwise affect the value of a foreign security (such as a change in the political climate or an issuer's credit quality), appreciation in the value of the foreign currency generally can be expected to increase the value of a foreign currency-denominated security in terms of U.S. dollars. A rise in foreign interest rates or decline in the value of the foreign currency relative to the U.S. dollar generally can be expected to depress the value of a foreign currency-denominated security.

There are other risks and costs involved in investing in foreign securities, which are in addition to the usual risks inherent in domestic investments. Investment in foreign securities involves higher costs than investment in U.S. securities, including higher transaction and custody costs as well as the imposition of additional taxes by foreign governments. Foreign investments also involve risks associated with the level of currency exchange rates, less complete financial information about the issuers, less market liquidity, more market volatility and political instability. Future political and economic developments, the possible imposition of withholding taxes on dividend income, the possible seizure or nationalization of foreign holdings, the possible establishment of exchange controls, or the adoption of other governmental restrictions might adversely affect an investment in foreign securities. Additionally, foreign banks and foreign branches of domestic banks are subject to less stringent reserve requirements, and to different accounting, auditing and recordkeeping requirements. Also, the legal remedies for investors may be more limited than the remedies available in the U.S. Additionally, many countries throughout the world are dependent on a healthy U.S. economy and are adversely affected when the U.S. economy weakens or its markets decline. For example, the decline in the U.S. subprime mortgage market quickly spread throughout global credit markets, triggering a liquidity crisis that affected fixed-income and equity markets around the world.

Although the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund may invest in securities denominated in foreign currencies, its portfolio securities and other assets are valued in U.S. dollars. Currency exchange rates may fluctuate significantly over short periods of time causing, together with other factors, the Fund's NAV to fluctuate as well. Currency exchange rates can be affected unpredictably by the intervention or the failure to intervene by U.S. or foreign governments or central banks, or by currency

controls or political developments in the U.S. or abroad. To the extent that the Fund's total assets, adjusted to reflect the Fund's net position after giving effect to currency transactions, are denominated in the currencies of foreign countries, the Fund will be more susceptible to the risk of adverse economic and political developments within those countries.

The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund also is subject to the possible imposition of exchange control regulations or freezes on the convertibility of currency. In addition, through the use of forward currency exchange contracts with other instruments, any net currency positions of the Fund may expose it to risks independent of its securities positions. Although the net long and short foreign currency exposure of the Fund will not exceed its total asset values, to the extent that the Fund is fully invested in foreign securities while also maintaining currency positions, it may be exposed to greater risk than it would have if it did not maintain the currency positions.

Dividends, if any, and interest payable on the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund's foreign portfolio securities may be subject to foreign withholding taxes. To the extent such taxes are not offset by credits or deductions allowed to investors under U.S. federal income tax law, they may reduce the net return to the shareholders. The Fund's income and, in some cases, capital gains from foreign securities will be subject to applicable taxation in certain of the countries in which it invests, and treaties between the U.S. and such countries may not be available in some cases to reduce the otherwise applicable tax rates. See "Taxes" on page 64.

The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund's foreign securities are generally held outside the United States in the primary market for the securities in the custody of certain eligible foreign banks and trust companies, as permitted under the 1940 Act ("foreign sub-custodians"). Settlement practices for foreign securities may differ from those in the United States. Some countries have limited governmental oversight and regulation of industry practices, stock exchanges, depositories, registrars, brokers and listed companies, which increases the risk of corruption and fraud and the possibility of losses to the Fund. In particular, under certain circumstances, foreign securities may settle on a delayed delivery basis, meaning that the Fund may be required to make payment for securities before the Fund has actually received delivery of the securities or deliver securities prior to the receipt of payment. Typically, in these cases, the Fund will receive evidence of ownership in accordance with the generally accepted settlement practices in the local market entitling the Fund to deliver payment at a future date, but there is a risk that the security will not be delivered to the Fund or that payment will not be received, although the Fund and its foreign sub-custodians take reasonable precautions to mitigate this risk. Foreign markets also have different clearance and settlement procedures, and in certain markets there have been times when settlements have been unable to keep pace with the volume of securities transactions, making it difficult to conduct such transactions. Such delays in settlement could result in temporary periods when a portion of the assets of the Fund remain uninvested and no return is earned on such assets. The inability of the Fund to make intended security purchases or sales due to settlement problems could result in missed attractive investment opportunities, losses to the Fund due to subsequent declines in value of the portfolio securities or, if the Fund has entered into a contract to sell the securities, possible liability to the purchaser. Losses can also result from lost, stolen or counterfeit securities; defaults by brokers and banks; failures or defects of the settlement system; or poor and improper record keeping by registrars and issuers.

The Funds may invest a significant percentage of their assets in the securities of issuers located in geographic regions with securities markets that are highly developed, liquid and subject to extensive regulation, including Europe and Japan. The Economic and Monetary Union of the European Union ("EU") requires compliance with restrictions on inflation rates, deficits, interest rates, debt levels and fiscal and monetary controls, each of which may significantly affect every country in Europe. Decreasing imports or exports, changes in governmental or EU regulations on trade, changes in the exchange rate of the euro, the default or threat of default by an EU member country on its sovereign debt, and recessions in EU economies may have a significant adverse effect on the economies of EU member countries and their trading partners. The European financial markets have recently experienced volatility and adverse trends due to concerns about the rising government debt levels of several European countries, including Greece, Spain, Ireland, Italy and Portugal. Recent concerns over the level and sustainability of the sovereign debt of the United States have aggravated this volatility. A default or debt restructuring by any European country would adversely impact holders of that country's debt and sellers of credit default swaps linked to that country's creditworthiness, which may be located in countries other than those listed above. These events have adversely affected the value and exchange rate of the euro and may continue to significantly affect the economies of every country in Europe, including countries that do not use the euro and non-EU member countries.

Additionally, in June of 2016, the United Kingdom (the "UK") approved a referendum to leave the EU, commonly referred to as "Brexit," which sparked depreciation in the value of the British pound and heightened risk of continued worldwide economic volatility. Pursuant to Article 50 of the Treaty of Lisbon, the UK gave notice in March 2017 of its withdrawal from the EU and commenced negotiations on the terms of withdrawal. With notice given, the negotiation period could last for two years or more, and during that period there might be considerable uncertainty as to the arrangements that might apply to the UK's

relationships with the EU and other countries following its anticipated withdrawal. This long-term uncertainty might affect other countries in the EU and elsewhere. It is also possible that the UK could initiate another referendum on the issue of Brexit, or that various countries within the UK, such as Scotland, could seek to separate and remain a part of the EU.

The UK has one of the largest economies in Europe and is a major trading partner with the other EU countries and the United States. If implemented, Brexit might negatively affect the City of London's economy, which is heavily dominated by financial services, as banks might be forced to move staff and comply with two separate sets of rules or lose business to banks in Continental Europe. In addition, Brexit would likely create additional economic stresses for the UK, including the potential for decreased trade, capital outflows, devaluation of the British pound, wider corporate bond spreads due to uncertainty, and declines in business and consumer spending as well as foreign direct investment. Further, the UK's departure from the EU would potentially cause volatility within the EU, which could trigger prolonged economic downturns in certain European countries or spark additional member states to contemplate departing the EU (thereby exacerbating political instability in the region).

The growth of Japan's economy has historically lagged that of its Asian neighbors and other major developed economies. The Japanese economy is heavily dependent on international trade and has been adversely affected by trade tariffs, other protectionist measures, competition from emerging economies and the economic conditions of its trading partners. Japan's relations with its neighbors, particularly China, North Korea, South Korea and Russia, have at times been strained due to territorial disputes, historical animosities and defense concerns. Most recently, the Japanese government has shown concern over the increased nuclear and military activity by North Korea. Strained relations may cause uncertainty in the Japanese markets and adversely affect the overall Japanese economy in times of crisis. China has become an important trading partner with Japan, yet the countries' political relationship has become strained. Should political tension increase, it could adversely affect the economy, especially the export sector, and destabilize the region as a whole. Japan is located in a part of the world that has historically been prone to natural disasters such as earthquakes, volcanoes and tsunamis and is economically sensitive to environmental events. Any such event, such as the major earthquake and tsunami, which struck Japan in March 2011, could result in a significant adverse impact on the Japanese economy. Historically, Japan has been subject to unpredictable national politics and may experience frequent political turnover. Future political developments may lead to changes in policy that might adversely affect the Fund's investments. In addition, the Japanese economy faces several concerns, including a financial system with large levels of nonperforming loans, over-leveraged corporate balance sheets, extensive cross-ownership by major corporations, a changing corporate governance structure, and large government deficits. The Japanese yen has fluctuated widely at times and any increase in its value may cause a decline in exports that could weaken the economy. Furthermore, Japan has an aging workforce. It is a labor market undergoing fundamental structural changes, as traditional lifetime employment clashes with the need for increased labor mobility, which may adversely affect Japan's economic competitiveness. Japan also remains heavily dependent on oil imports, and higher commodity prices could therefore have a negative impact on the economy. Furthermore, Japanese corporations often engage in high levels of corporate leveraging, extensive cross-purchases of the securities of other corporations and are subject to a changing corporate governance structure.

**FOREIGN INVESTMENTS – EMERGING MARKETS.** The Funds may invest in countries with emerging economies or securities markets. These countries are generally located in the Asia and Pacific regions, the Middle East, Eastern Europe, Central America, South America and Africa. Political and economic structures in many of these countries may be undergoing significant evolution and rapid development, and these countries may lack the social, political and economic stability characteristics of more developed countries. In general, the securities markets of these countries are less liquid, subject to greater price volatility, have smaller market capitalizations and have problems with securities registration and custody. As a result, the risks presented by investments in these countries are heightened. Additionally, settlement procedures in emerging countries are frequently less developed and reliable than those in the United States and may involve the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund's delivery of securities before receipt of payment for their sale. Settlement or registration problems may make it more difficult for the Fund to value its portfolio securities and could cause the Fund to miss attractive investment opportunities, to have a portion of its assets uninvested or to incur losses due to the failure of a counterparty to pay for securities the Fund has delivered or the Fund's inability to complete its contractual obligations.

Unanticipated political, economic or social developments may affect the value of the Funds' investments in emerging market countries and the availability to the Funds of additional investments in these countries. Some of these countries may have in the past failed to recognize private property rights and may have at times nationalized or expropriated the assets of private companies. There have been occasional limitations on the movements of funds and other assets between different countries. The small size and inexperience of the securities markets in certain of such countries and the limited volume of trading in securities in those countries may make the Fund's investments in such countries illiquid and more volatile than investments in Japan or most

Western European countries, and the Fund may be required to establish special custodial or other arrangements before making certain investments in those countries. There may be little financial or accounting information available with respect to issuers located in certain of such countries, and it may be difficult as a result to assess the value or prospects of an investment in such issuers.

In certain countries, there may be fewer publicly traded securities and the market may be dominated by a few issues or sectors. Issuers and securities markets in such countries are not subject to as extensive and frequent accounting, financial and other reporting requirements or as comprehensive government regulations as are issuers and securities markets in the U.S. In particular, the assets and profits appearing on the financial statements of emerging country issuers may not reflect their financial position or results of operations in the same manner as financial statements for U.S. issuers. Substantially less information may be publicly available about emerging country issuers than is available about issuers in the United States.

Emerging country securities markets are typically marked by a high concentration of market capitalization and trading volume in a small number of issuers representing a limited number of industries, as well as a high concentration of ownership of such securities by a limited number of investors. The markets for securities in certain emerging countries are in the earliest stages of their development. Even the markets for relatively widely traded securities in emerging countries may not be able to absorb, without price disruptions, a significant increase in trading volume or trades of a size customarily undertaken by institutional investors in the securities markets of developed countries. The limited size of many of these securities markets can cause prices to be erratic for reasons apart from factors that affect the soundness and competitiveness of the securities issuers. For example, prices may be unduly influenced by traders who control large positions in these markets. Additionally, market making and arbitrage activities are generally less extensive in such markets, which may contribute to increased volatility and reduced liquidity of such markets. The limited liquidity of emerging country securities may also affect a Fund's ability to accurately value its portfolio securities or to acquire or dispose of securities at the price and time it wishes to do so or in order to meet redemption requests.

Certain emerging market countries may have antiquated legal systems, which may adversely impact a Fund. For example, while the potential liability of a shareholder in a U.S. corporation with respect to acts of the corporation is generally limited to the amount of the shareholder's investment, the notion of limited liability is less clear in certain emerging market countries. Similarly, the rights of investors in emerging market companies may be more limited than those of shareholders in U.S. corporations. In addition, the systems of corporate governance to which issuers in certain emerging countries are subject may be less advanced than the systems to which issuers located in more developed countries are subject, and therefore, shareholders of such issuers may not receive many of the protections available to shareholders of issuers located in more developed countries. These risks may be heightened in Russia.

Transaction costs, including brokerage commissions or dealer mark-ups, in emerging countries may be higher than in developed securities markets. In addition, existing laws and regulations are often inconsistently applied. As legal systems in emerging countries develop, foreign investors may be adversely affected by new or amended laws and regulations. In circumstances where adequate laws exist, it may not be possible to obtain swift and equitable enforcement of the law.

Certain emerging countries may restrict or control foreign investments in their securities markets. These restrictions may limit the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund's investment in those countries and may increase the expenses of the Fund. Certain emerging countries require governmental approval prior to investments by foreign persons or limit investment by foreign persons to only a specified percentage of an issuer's outstanding securities or a specific class of securities which may have less advantageous terms (including price) than securities of the company available for purchase by nationals. In addition, the repatriation of both investment income and capital from emerging countries may be subject to restrictions which require governmental consents or prohibit repatriation entirely for a period of time.

Even where there is no outright restriction on repatriation of capital, the mechanics of repatriation may affect certain aspects of the operation of the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund. Custodial and/or settlement systems in emerging countries may not be fully developed. To the extent the Fund invests in emerging countries, Fund assets that are traded in those markets which have been entrusted to sub-custodians in those markets may be exposed to risks for which the sub-custodian will have no liability.

Emerging countries may be subject to a substantially greater degree of economic, political and social instability and disruption than more developed countries. This instability may result from, among other things, the following: (i) authoritarian governments or military involvement in political and economic decision making, including changes or attempted changes in governments through extra-constitutional means; (ii) social unrest associated with demands for improved political, economic or



social conditions; (iii) internal insurgencies; (iv) hostile relations with neighboring countries; (v) ethnic, religious and racial disaffection or conflict; and (vi) the absence of developed legal structures governing foreign private investments and private property. The Fund's investments can also be adversely affected by any increase in taxes or by political, economic or diplomatic developments.

The Funds may invest in former "east bloc" countries in Eastern Europe. Most Eastern European countries had a centrally planned, socialist economy for a substantial period of time. The governments of many Eastern European countries have more recently been implementing reforms directed at political and economic liberalization, including efforts to decentralize the economic decision-making process and move towards a market economy. However, business entities in many Eastern European countries do not have an extended history of operating in a market-oriented economy, and the ultimate impact of Eastern European countries' attempts to move toward more market-oriented economies is currently unclear. In addition, any change in the leadership or policies of Eastern European countries may halt the expansion of or reverse the liberalization of foreign investment policies now occurring and adversely affect existing investment opportunities.

The economies of emerging countries may suffer from unfavorable growth of gross domestic product, rates of inflation and hyperinflation, capital reinvestment, resources, self-sufficiency and balance of payments. Many emerging countries have experienced in the past, and continue to experience, high rates of inflation. In certain countries inflation has at times accelerated rapidly to hyperinflationary levels, creating a negative interest rate environment and sharply eroding the value of outstanding financial assets in those countries. Other emerging countries, on the other hand, have recently experienced deflationary pressures and are in economic recessions.

The economies of many emerging countries are heavily dependent upon international trade and are accordingly affected by protective trade barriers and the economic conditions of their trading partners. In addition, the economies of some emerging countries are vulnerable to weakness in world prices for their commodity exports.

Risks related to currencies and corporate actions are also greater in emerging countries than in developed countries. For example, some emerging countries may have fixed or managed currencies that are not free-floating against the U.S. dollar. Certain emerging countries may experience sudden and large adjustments in their currency, which can have a disruptive and adverse effect on foreign investors. Some emerging countries have a higher risk of currency devaluations, and some of these countries may experience sustained periods of high inflation or rapid changes in inflation rates, which can have negative effects on a country's economy and securities markets. There may be no significant foreign exchange market for certain currencies making it difficult for the Fund to engage in foreign currency transactions. Some emerging countries may impose restrictions on the free conversion of their currencies into foreign currencies, including the U.S. dollar. Corporate action procedures in emerging countries may be less reliable and have limited or no involvement by the depositories and central banks. Lack of standard practices and payment systems can lead to significant delays in payment.

Many emerging countries are highly dependent on foreign loans for their operations. There have been moratoria on, and refinancing of, repayments with respect to these loans. Some of the refinancings have imposed restrictions and conditions on the economies of such nations that have adversely affected their economic growth.

Investment exposure to China subjects the Funds to risks specific to China. China may be subject to considerable degrees of economic, political and social instability. China is a developing market and demonstrates significantly higher volatility from time to time in comparison to developed markets. The Chinese government has undertaken reform of economic and market practices and expansion of the sphere for private ownership of property in China. However, Chinese markets generally continue to experience inefficiency, volatility and pricing anomalies resulting from governmental influence, a lack of publicly available information and/or political and social instability. Internal social unrest or confrontations with other neighboring countries, including military conflicts in response to such events, may also disrupt economic development in China and result in a greater risk of currency fluctuations, currency convertibility, interest rate fluctuations and higher rates of inflation. Export growth continues to be a major driver of China's rapid economic growth. Reduction in spending on Chinese products and services, institution of tariffs or other trade barriers, or a downturn in any of the economies of China's key trading partners may have an adverse impact on the Chinese economy.

The Funds may be invested in issuers located in Central and South American countries. Many economies in Latin America have experienced high interest rates, economic volatility, inflation, currency devaluations and high unemployment rates. Any adverse economic event in one country can have a significant effect on other countries of this region. In addition, commodities (such as oil, gas and minerals) represent a significant percentage of the region's exports and many economies in this region are particularly sensitive to fluctuations in commodity prices.

The Funds may be invested in issuers located in Russia. The Russian economy is heavily dependent on exports. Oil, natural gas, metals, and timber account for more than 80% of Russia's exports. Therefore, Russia is vulnerable to fluctuations in world commodity prices and on the price and demand for these commodities and natural resources. Any changes in any of these sectors could have an adverse impact on the Russian economy. The Russian securities market is characterized by a limited volume of trading resulting in difficulty in obtaining accurate prices and trading. The Russian securities market, as compared to U.S. markets, has significant price volatility, less liquidity, a smaller market capitalization and a smaller number of traded securities. There is also little publicly-available information about issuers. Settlement, clearing and registration of securities transactions are subject to risks because of insufficient registration systems that may not be subject to effective government supervision. This may result in significant delays or problems in registering the transfer of shares. Ownership of shares in Russian companies is recorded by companies themselves and by registrars instead of through a central registration system. It is possible that the Fund's ownership rights could be lost through fraud or negligence. While applicable Russian regulations impose liability on registrars for losses resulting from their errors, it may be difficult for the Funds to enforce any rights they may have against the registrar or issuer of the securities in the event of loss of share registration. Adverse currency exchange rates are a risk and there is a lack of available currency hedging instruments. Investments in Russia may be subject to the risk of nationalization or expropriation of assets.

In addition, as a result of recent geopolitical events involving the Russian Federation, the United States, the European Union, and other countries have imposed sanctions on certain Russian individuals and Russian corporations. Additional broader sanctions may be imposed in the future. These sanctions, or even the threat of further sanctions, may result in the decline of the value and liquidity of Russian securities, a weakening of the ruble or other adverse consequences to the Russian economy. The sanctions could also result in Russia taking counter measures or retaliatory actions, which may further impair the value and liquidity of Russian securities. These events could have a negative effect on the performance of the Funds. Compliance with each of these sanctions may impair the ability of the Funds to buy, sell, hold, receive, deliver or otherwise transact in the affected securities or other securities of such issuers. If it becomes impracticable or unlawful for the Funds to hold securities subject to, or otherwise affected by, sanctions, or if deemed appropriate by the Funds' investment adviser, the Funds may prohibit in-kind deposits of the affected securities in connection with creation transactions and instead require a cash deposit, which may also increase the Fund's transaction costs. Current or future sanctions may result in Russia taking counter measures or retaliatory actions, which may further impair the value and liquidity of Russian securities. These retaliatory measures may include the immediate freeze of Russian assets held by a Fund. In the event of such a freeze of any Fund assets, including depository receipts, a Fund may need to liquidate non-restricted assets in order to satisfy any Fund redemption orders. The liquidation of Fund assets during this time may also result in the Fund receiving substantially lower prices for its securities.

#### **FORWARD COMMITMENTS, WHEN-ISSUED SECURITIES AND DELAYED-DELIVERY TRANSACTIONS.**

Each Fund may purchase securities on a when-issued basis or purchase or sell securities on a forward commitment (sometimes called delayed-delivery) basis. These transactions involve a commitment by a Fund to purchase or sell securities at a future date. The price of the underlying securities (usually expressed in terms of yield) and the date when the securities will be delivered and paid for (the settlement date) are fixed at the time the transaction is negotiated. When-issued purchases and forward commitment transactions normally are negotiated directly with the other party.

Each Fund will purchase securities on a when-issued basis or purchase or sell securities on a forward commitment basis only with the intention of completing the transaction and actually purchasing or selling the securities. If deemed advisable as a matter of investment strategy, however, a Fund may dispose of or negotiate a commitment after entering into it. Each Fund also may sell securities it has committed to purchase before those securities are delivered to a Fund on the settlement date. A Fund may realize a capital gain or loss in connection with these transactions.

When a Fund purchases securities on a when-issued, delayed-delivery or forward commitment basis, a Fund will segregate liquid assets having a value (determined daily) at least equal to the amount of a Fund's purchase commitments until three days prior to the settlement date, or will otherwise cover its position. These procedures are designed to ensure that a Fund will maintain sufficient assets at all times to cover its obligations under when-issued purchases, forward commitments and delayed-delivery transactions. For purposes of determining a Fund's average dollar-weighted maturity, the maturity of when-issued, delayed delivery or forward commitment securities will be calculated from the commitment date.

**FUTURES CONTRACTS AND RELATED OPTIONS AND SWAPS.** When necessary to manage the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund's exposure to interest-rate risks, the Fund may take short or long positions in U.S. Treasury futures or transact in interest rate swaps. The Fund may also invest in other interest rate futures contracts, including, but not limited to, Eurodollar and Federal Funds futures. An interest rate futures contract is an exchange-traded contract for which the reference instrument is an interest-bearing, fixed-income security or an inter-bank deposit. Two examples of common interest rate futures contracts are U.S. Treasury futures contracts and Eurodollar futures contracts. The reference instrument for a U.S. Treasury futures contract is a U.S. Treasury security. The reference instrument for a Eurodollar futures contract is the London Interbank Offered

Rate (commonly referred to as LIBOR); Eurodollar futures contracts enable the purchaser to obtain a fixed rate for the lending of funds over a stated period of time and the seller to obtain a fixed rate for a borrowing of funds over that same period.

The Fund may purchase and sell call and put options on futures contracts. These futures contracts and options will be used to facilitate trading or to reduce transaction costs and to manage interest rate risk. The Fund will only enter into futures contracts and options on futures contracts that are traded on a U.S. or foreign exchange, as applicable. The Fund will not use futures or options for speculative purposes.

The Trust, on behalf of the Fund, has claimed an exclusion from the definition of the term “commodity pool operator” (“CPO”) under the Commodity Exchange Act, and, therefore, is not subject to registration or regulation as a commodity pool operator under that Act. The Investment Adviser is not subject to registration or regulations as a commodity pool operator with respect to the Fund under the Commodity Exchange Act. As a result, the Fund is limited in its ability to trade instruments subject to the CFTC’s jurisdiction, including commodity futures (which include futures on broad-based securities indexes and interest rate futures), options on commodity futures, certain swaps or other investments (whether directly or indirectly through investments in other investment vehicles).

Under this exclusion, the Fund must satisfy one of the following two trading limitations whenever it enters into a new commodity trading position: (1) the aggregate initial margin and premiums required to establish the Fund’s positions in CFTC-regulated instruments may not exceed 5% of the liquidation value of the Fund’s portfolio (after accounting for unrealized profits and unrealized losses on any such investments); or (2) the aggregate net notional value of such instruments, determined at the time the most recent position was established, may not exceed 100% of the liquidation value of the Fund’s portfolio (after accounting for unrealized profits and unrealized losses on any such positions). The Fund would not be required to consider its exposure to such instruments if they were held for “bona fide hedging” purposes, as such term is defined in the rules of the CFTC. In addition to meeting one of the foregoing trading limitations, the Fund may not market itself as a commodity pool or otherwise as a vehicle for trading in the markets for CFTC-regulated instruments.

The Fund will engage in transactions in futures contracts and related options only to the extent such transactions are consistent with the requirement of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”) for maintaining its qualifications as regulated investment companies for federal income tax purposes.

Participation in foreign futures and foreign options transactions involves the execution and clearing of trades on or subject to the rules of a foreign board of trade. Neither the National Futures Association (the “NFA”) nor any domestic exchange regulates activities of any foreign boards of trade, including the execution, delivery and clearing of transactions, or has the power to compel enforcement of the rules of a foreign board of trade or any applicable foreign law. This is true even if the exchange is formally linked to a domestic market so that a position taken on the market may be liquidated by a transaction on another market. Moreover, such laws or regulations will vary depending on the foreign country in which the foreign futures or foreign options transaction occurs. For these reasons, persons who trade foreign futures or foreign options contracts may not be afforded certain of the protective measures provided by the Commodity Exchange Act, the CFTC regulations and the rules of the NFA and any domestic exchange, including the right to use reparations proceedings before the CFTC and arbitration proceedings provided them by the NFA or any domestic futures exchange. In particular, the Fund’s investments in foreign futures or foreign options transactions may not be provided the same protections in respect of transactions on United States futures exchanges. In addition, the price of any foreign futures or foreign options contract may be affected by any variance in the foreign exchange rate between the time an order is placed and the time it is liquidated, offset or exercised.

The FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund may enter into total rate of return swaps, which are contracts that obligate a party to pay or receive interest in exchange for the payment by the other party of the total return generated by a security, a basket of securities, an index or an index component.

The Fund may enter into interest rate swaps. Interest rate swaps involve the exchange by the Fund with another party of their respective commitments to pay or receive interest, e.g., an exchange of floating rate payments for fixed rate payments with respect to a notional amount of principal.

Some swap transactions, such as interest rate and total return swaps, are entered into on a net basis, i.e., the two payment streams are netted out, with the Fund receiving or paying, as the case may be, only the net amount of the two payments. The Fund will enter into equity swaps only on a net basis. Payments may be made at the conclusion of the swap agreement or periodically during its term. These swaps do not involve the delivery of securities or other underlying assets. Accordingly, the risk of loss with respect to equity swaps is limited to the net amount of payments that the Fund is contractually obligated to make. If the other party to any swap entered into on a net basis defaults, the Fund’s risk of loss consists of the net amount of payments that the Fund is contractually entitled to receive, if any. In contrast, other transactions may involve the payment of the gross amount

owed. To the extent that the amount payable by the Fund under a swap is offset by segregated cash or liquid assets, the Fund and the Investment Adviser believe that such transactions do not constitute senior securities under the 1940 Act and, accordingly, will not treat them as being subject to the Fund's borrowing restrictions.

The Fund will not enter into any swap transactions unless the unsecured commercial paper, senior debt or claims-paying ability of the other party is rated either A, or A-1 or better by S&P Global Ratings ("S&P"), or Fitch Ratings ("Fitch"); or A or Prime-1 or better by Moody's Investors Service, Inc. ("Moody's"), or has received a comparable rating from another organization that is recognized as a nationally recognized statistical rating organization ("NRSRO") or, if unrated by such rating organization, is determined to be of comparable quality by the Investment Adviser. If there is a default by the other party to a swap transaction, the Fund will have contractual remedies pursuant to the agreements related to the transaction. These contractual remedies, however, may be subject to bankruptcy and insolvency laws that may affect the Fund's rights as a creditor (e.g., the Fund may not receive the net amount of payments that it is contractually entitled to receive). The swap market has grown substantially in recent years with a large number of banks and investment banking firms acting both as principals and as agents utilizing standardized swap documentation. As a result, the swap market has become relatively liquid in comparison with markets for other similar instruments which are traded in the interbank market.

The use of total rate of return and interest rate swaps is a highly specialized activity that involves investment techniques and risks different from those associated with ordinary portfolio securities transactions. If the Investment Adviser is incorrect in its forecasts of market values and/or interest rates, the investment performance of the Fund would be less favorable than it would have been if this investment technique were not used. For a description of CFTC regulations affecting swap transactions and certain other derivatives, see "Futures Contracts and Related Options" below and Appendix B.

Provisions in the Dodd-Frank Act include new capital and margin requirements and the mandatory use of clearinghouse mechanisms for many over-the-counter derivatives transactions. In connection with the Fund's position in a futures contract or related option or swap transaction, the Fund will segregate liquid assets or will otherwise cover its position in accordance with applicable SEC requirements.

For a further description of futures contracts and related options, see Appendix B to this SAI.

**HEDGING.** The Funds may engage in hedging. Hedging is a strategy in which a derivative is used to offset the risks associated with other Fund holdings. Losses on the other investment may be substantially reduced by gains on a derivative that reacts in an opposite manner to market movements. While hedging can reduce losses, it can also reduce or eliminate gains or cause losses if the market moves in a manner different from that anticipated by a Fund or if the cost of the derivative outweighs the benefit of the hedge. Hedging also involves correlation risk, i.e., the risk that changes in the value of the derivative will not match those of the holdings being hedged as expected by a Fund, in which case any losses on the holdings being hedged may not be reduced or may be increased. The inability to close options and futures positions also could have an adverse impact on a Fund's ability to hedge effectively its portfolio. There is also a risk of loss by a Fund of margin deposits or collateral in the event of bankruptcy of a broker with whom a Fund has an open position in an option, a futures contract or a related option.

**ILLIQUID OR RESTRICTED SECURITIES.** Each Fund is required to limit its investments in illiquid securities to no more than 15% of its total assets. Illiquid securities generally are any securities that cannot be disposed of promptly and in the ordinary course of business within seven days at approximately the amount at which a Fund has valued the securities. The Funds may purchase commercial paper issued pursuant to Section 4(2) of the Securities Act and securities that are not registered under the Securities Act but can be sold to "qualified institutional buyers" in accordance with Rule 144A under the Securities Act ("Rule 144A Securities"). With respect to the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund, these securities will be considered illiquid. In addition, the aggregate value of all the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund's illiquid securities, Rule 144A Securities, variable amount master demand notes, fixed and variable rate loan participations and assignments, "inverse floaters", and long-term variable and floating rate bonds where the Fund obtains at the time of purchase the right to put the bond back to the issuer or a third party at par at a specified date will not exceed 15% of the Fund's total assets. With respect to the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund, Rule 144A Securities will not be considered illiquid so long as the Investment Adviser determines, under guidelines approved by the Trust's Board of Trustees, that an adequate trading market exists. This practice could increase the level of illiquidity for Rule 144A Securities during any period that qualified institutional buyers become uninterested in purchasing these securities. Under guidelines approved by the Trust's Board of Trustees, the Investment Adviser monitors the liquidity of such securities and may consider a number of factors set forth in the guidelines to determine whether an adequate trading market exists. If an adequate trading market does not exist, the securities will be considered to be illiquid.

**INDEBTEDNESS, LOAN PARTICIPATIONS AND ASSIGNMENTS.** Each Fund may purchase indebtedness and participations in commercial loans. Such investments may be secured or unsecured. Indebtedness is different from traditional debt securities in that debt securities are part of a large issue of securities to the public and indebtedness may not be a security, but may

represent a specific commercial loan to a borrower. Loan participations typically represent direct participation, together with other parties, in a loan to a corporate borrower, and generally are offered by banks or other financial institutions or lending syndicates. Each Fund may participate in such syndications, or can buy part of a loan, becoming a part lender. When purchasing indebtedness and loan participations, a Fund assumes the credit risk associated with the corporate borrower and may assume the credit risk associated with an interposed bank or other financial intermediary. The indebtedness and loan participations in which a Fund intends to invest may not be rated by any nationally recognized rating service.

Each Fund may invest in debtor-in-possession financings (commonly known as “DIP financings”). DIP financings are arranged when an entity seeks the protections of the bankruptcy court under Chapter 11 of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code. These financings allow the entity to continue its business operations while reorganizing under Chapter 11. Such financings constitute senior liens on unencumbered security (*i.e.*, security not subject to other creditors’ claims). There is a risk that the entity will not emerge from Chapter 11 and be forced to liquidate its assets under Chapter 7 of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code. In the event of liquidation, a Fund’s only recourse will be against the property securing the DIP financing. A loan is often administered by an agent bank acting as agent for all holders. The agent bank administers the terms of the loan, as specified in the loan agreement. In addition, the agent bank is normally responsible for the collection of principal and interest payments from the corporate borrower and the apportionment of these payments to the credit of all institutions that are parties to the loan agreement. Unless, under the terms of the loan or other indebtedness, a Fund has direct recourse against the corporate borrower, a Fund may have to rely on the agent bank or other financial intermediary to apply appropriate credit remedies against a corporate borrower.

A financial institution’s employment as agent bank might be terminated in the event that it fails to observe a requisite standard of care or becomes insolvent. A successor agent bank would generally be appointed to replace the terminated agent bank, and assets held by the agent bank under the loan agreement should remain available to holders of such indebtedness. However, if assets held by the agent bank for the benefit of a Fund were determined to be subject to the claims of the agent bank’s general creditors, a Fund might incur certain costs and delays in realizing payment on a loan or loan participation and could suffer a loss of principal and/or interest. In situations involving other interposed financial institutions (*e.g.*, an insurance company or governmental agency) similar risks may arise.

Purchasers of loans and other forms of direct indebtedness depend primarily upon the creditworthiness of the corporate borrower for payment of principal and interest. If a Fund does not receive scheduled interest or principal payments on such indebtedness, a Fund’s share price and yield could be adversely affected. Loans that are fully secured offer a Fund more protection than an unsecured loan in the event of non-payment of scheduled interest or principal. However, there is no assurance that the liquidation of collateral from a secured loan would satisfy the corporate borrower’s obligation, or that the collateral can be liquidated.

Each Fund may invest in loan participations with credit quality comparable to that of issuers of its securities investments. Indebtedness of companies whose creditworthiness is poor involves substantially greater risks, and may be highly speculative. Some companies may never pay off their indebtedness, or may pay only a small fraction of the amount owed. Consequently, when investing in indebtedness of companies with poor credit, a Fund bears a substantial risk of losing the entire amount invested.

Loans and other types of direct indebtedness may not be readily marketable and may be subject to restrictions on resale. In some cases, negotiations involved in disposing of indebtedness may require weeks to complete. Consequently, some indebtedness may be difficult or impossible to dispose of readily at what NTI believes to be a fair price. In addition, valuation of illiquid indebtedness involves a greater degree of judgment in determining a Fund’s net asset value than if that value were based on available market quotations, and could result in significant variations in a Fund’s daily share price. At the same time, some loan interests are traded among certain financial institutions and accordingly may be deemed liquid. As the market for different types of indebtedness develops, the liquidity of these instruments is expected to improve. In addition, a Fund currently intends to treat indebtedness for which there is no readily available market as illiquid for purposes of a Fund’s limitation on illiquid investments. Investments in loan participations are considered to be debt obligations for purposes of a Fund’s investment restriction relating to the lending of funds or assets by a Fund.

Investments in loans through a direct assignment of the financial institution’s interests with respect to the loan may involve additional risks to a Fund. For example, if a loan is foreclosed, a Fund could become part owner of any collateral, and would bear the costs and liabilities associated with owning and disposing of the collateral. In addition, it is conceivable that under emerging legal theories of lender liability, a Fund could be held liable as co-lender. It is unclear whether loans and other forms of direct indebtedness offer securities law protections against fraud and misrepresentation. In the absence of definitive regulatory guidance, each Fund relies on NTI’s research in an attempt to avoid situations where fraud or misrepresentation could adversely affect the Fund.

**INFLATION-INDEXED SECURITIES.** Each Fund may invest in U.S. Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities

("TIPS"). Inflation-indexed securities issued by the U.S. Treasury have varying maturities and pay interest on a semiannual basis equal to a fixed percentage of the inflation-adjusted principal amount. If the periodic adjustment rate measuring inflation falls, the principal value of inflation-indexed bonds will be adjusted downward, and consequently the interest payable on these securities (calculated with respect to a smaller principal amount) will be reduced. Repayment of the original bond principal upon maturity (as adjusted for inflation) is guaranteed in the case of U.S. Treasury inflation-indexed bonds, even during a period of deflation. However, the current market value of the bonds is not guaranteed and will fluctuate. A Fund also may invest in other inflation-related bonds, which may or may not provide a similar guarantee. If a guarantee of principal is not provided, the adjusted principal value of the bond repaid at maturity may be less than the original principal amount.

The value of inflation-indexed bonds is expected to change in response to changes in real interest rates. Real interest rates in turn are tied to the relationship between nominal interest rates and the rate of inflation. Therefore, if the rate of inflation rises at a faster rate than nominal interest rates, real interest rates might decline, leading to an increase in value of inflation-indexed bonds. In contrast, if nominal interest rates increase at a faster rate than inflation, real interest rates might rise, leading to a decrease in value of inflation-indexed bonds. Any increase in the principal amount of an inflation-indexed bond will be considered taxable ordinary income, even though investors do not receive their principal until maturity.

While these securities are expected to be protected from long-term inflationary trends, short-term increases in inflation may lead to a decline in value. If interest rates rise due to reasons other than inflation, investors in these securities may not be protected to the extent that the increase is not reflected in the bond's inflation measure.

The periodic adjustment of U.S. inflation-indexed bonds is tied to the Consumer Price Index for Urban Consumers ("CPI-U"), which is calculated monthly by the U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics. The CPI-U is a measurement of changes in the cost of living, made up of components such as housing, food, transportation and energy. There can be no assurance that the CPI-U will accurately measure the real rate of inflation in the prices of goods and services.

The taxation of inflation-indexed Treasury securities is similar to the taxation of conventional bonds. Both interest payments and the difference between original principal and the inflation-adjusted principal will be treated as interest income subject to taxation. Interest payments are taxable when received or accrued. The inflation adjustment to the principal is subject to tax in the year the adjustment is made, not at maturity of the security when the cash from the repayment of principal is received. If an upward adjustment has been made (which typically should happen), investors in non-tax-deferred accounts will pay taxes on this amount currently. Decreases in the indexed principal can be deducted only from current or previous interest payments reported as income. Inflation-indexed Treasury securities therefore have a potential cash flow mismatch to an investor, because investors must pay taxes on the inflation-adjusted principal before the repayment of principal is received. It is possible that, particularly for high income tax bracket investors, inflation-indexed Treasury securities would not generate enough income in a given year to cover the tax liability they could create. This is similar to the current tax treatment for zero-coupon bonds and other discount securities. If inflation-indexed Treasury securities are sold prior to maturity, capital losses or gains are realized in the same manner as traditional bonds. The Funds, however, distributes income on a monthly basis. Investors in the Funds will receive dividends that represent both the interest payments and the principal adjustments of the inflation-indexed securities held in the Funds.

**INVESTMENT COMPANIES.** Each Fund may invest in securities of other investment companies, including other ETFs, to the extent permitted by law, regulation, exemptive order or SEC staff guidance. Under the 1940 Act, a Fund's investment in investment companies will be limited, subject to certain exceptions, so that, as determined after a purchase is made, either: (a) not more than 3% of the total outstanding stock of such investment company will be owned by a Fund, the Trust as a whole and its affiliated persons (as defined in the 1940 Act); or (b) (i) not more than 5% of the value of the total assets of a Fund will be invested in the securities of any one investment company, (ii) not more than 10% of the value of the total assets of the Fund will be invested in the aggregate in securities of investment companies as a group, and (iii) not more than 3% of the outstanding voting stock of any one investment company will be owned by the Fund. To the extent allowed by law or regulation, the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund intends from time to time to invest its assets in Underlying Funds, in excess of the limits discussed above. These limits will not apply to the investment of uninvested cash balances in shares of registered or unregistered money market funds whether affiliated or unaffiliated. The foregoing exemption, however, only applies to an unregistered money market fund that (i) limits its investments to those in which a money market fund may invest under Rule 2a-7 of the 1940 Act, and (ii) undertakes to comply with all the other provisions of Rule 2a-7.

Investments by the Funds in other investment companies, including ETFs, will be subject to the limitations of the 1940 Act except as permitted by SEC exemptive orders. The FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund may from time to time rely on SEC orders that permit them to invest in certain ETFs beyond the limits contained in the 1940 Act, subject to certain terms and conditions. Generally, these terms and conditions require the Board to approve policies and procedures relating to certain of the Fund's investments in ETFs. These policies and procedures require, among other things, that (i) the Investment Adviser conducts

the Fund's investment in ETFs without regard to any consideration received by the Fund or any of its affiliated persons and (ii) the Investment Adviser certifies to the Board quarterly that it has not received any consideration in connection with an investment by the Fund in an ETF, or if it has, the amount and purpose of the consideration will be reported to the Board and an equivalent amount of advisory fees shall be waived by the Investment Adviser.

NTI has contractually agreed to waive Management Fees or reimburse certain expenses in an amount equal to the sum of (a) any acquired fund fees and expenses, if any, incurred by the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund that are attributable to the Fund's investment in acquired funds managed by NTI or an investment adviser controlling, controlled by, or under common control with NTI ("Affiliated Funds"); and (b) 0.05% or such lesser amount in acquired fund fees and expenses incurred by the Fund that are attributable to the Fund's investment in acquired funds that are not Affiliated Funds, until March 1, 2019. The Fund's Board of Trustees may terminate the contractual arrangements at any time if it determines that it is in the best interest of the Fund and its shareholders.

Certain investment companies whose securities are purchased by the Funds may not be obligated to redeem such securities in an amount exceeding 1% of the investment company's total outstanding securities during any period of less than 30 days. Therefore, such securities that exceed this amount may be illiquid.

If required by the 1940 Act, and/or SEC exemptive orders, each Fund expects to vote the shares of other investment companies that are held by it in the same proportion as the vote of all other holders of such securities.

A Fund may adhere to other limitations with respect to its investments in securities issued by other investment companies if required or permitted by the SEC or deemed to be in the best interests of the Trust.

*INVESTMENTS IN ETFs.* Shares of ETFs are listed for trading on national securities exchanges and trade throughout the day on those exchanges and other secondary markets. There can be no assurance that the requirements of the national securities exchanges necessary to maintain the listing of shares of the ETFs will continue to be met. A national securities exchange may, but is not required to, remove the shares of the ETFs from listing if (1) following the initial twelve-month period beginning upon the commencement of trading of an ETF, there are fewer than fifty (50) record and/or beneficial holders of such ETF for thirty (30) or more consecutive trading days; (2) the value of the underlying index on which an ETF is based is no longer calculated or available; (3) the IOPV of an ETF is no longer calculated or available; or (4) any other event shall occur or condition exist that, in the opinion of the Listing Exchange, makes further dealings on the Listing Exchange inadvisable. A national securities exchange will remove the shares of an ETF from listing and trading upon termination of the ETF. Shares of each ETF trade on exchanges at prices at, above or below their most recent NAV. The per share NAV of each ETF is calculated at the end of each business day and fluctuates with changes in the market value of such ETF's holdings since the most recent calculation. The trading prices of an ETF's shares fluctuate continuously throughout trading hours based on market supply and demand rather than NAV. The trading prices of an ETF's shares may deviate significantly from its NAV during periods of market volatility. Any of these factors may lead to an ETF's shares trading at a premium or discount to NAV. Exchange prices are not expected to correlate exactly with an ETF's NAV due to timing reasons as well as market supply and demand factors. In addition, disruptions to an ETF's creations and redemptions or the existence of extreme market volatility may result in trading prices of ETF shares that differ significantly from NAV. If a Fund purchases shares of ETFs at a time when the market price of an ETF's shares are at a premium to the NAV or sells at a time when the market price of an ETF is at a discount to the NAV, then the Fund may sustain losses.

*MONEY MARKET FUNDS INVESTMENTS.* Certain money market funds in which the Funds may invest, including certain money market mutual funds managed by the Investment Adviser, must calculate their net asset value per share to the nearest 0.01%, which produces fluctuations in the shares' value in response to small changes in market values. Because the share price of these money market funds will fluctuate, when a Fund sells its shares they may be worth more or less than what the Fund originally paid for them. A Fund could also lose money if the money market fund holds defaulted securities or as a result of adverse market conditions. These money market funds may impose a fee ("liquidity fee") upon the redemption of their shares or may temporarily suspend the ability to redeem shares if the money market fund's liquidity falls below the required minimums because of market conditions or other factors.

Funds may also invest in money market funds that invest at least 99.5% of their assets in U.S. government securities ("government money market funds"). Government money market funds may seek to maintain a stable price of \$1.00 per share and are generally not permitted to impose liquidity fees or temporarily suspend redemptions. However, government money market funds typically offer materially lower yields than other money market funds with fluctuating share prices. A Fund could lose money invested in a government money market fund. An investment in a money market fund, including a government money market fund, is not insured or guaranteed by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation ("FDIC") or any other government agency. A money market fund's sponsor has no legal obligation to provide financial support to the money market fund, and you should not expect that the sponsor or any person will provide financial support to a money market fund at any time.

In addition to the fees and expenses that a Fund directly bears, the Fund indirectly bears the fees and expenses of any money market funds in which it invests, including affiliated money market funds. By investing in a money market fund, a Fund will be exposed to the investment risks of the money market fund in direct proportion to such investment.

**LIQUIDITY RISK MANAGEMENT RULE RISK.** In October 2016, the SEC adopted a liquidity risk management rule requiring open-end funds, including ETFs such as the Funds, to establish a liquidity risk management program and enhance disclosures regarding fund liquidity. There are exclusions from certain portions of the liquidity risk management program requirements for “in-kind” ETFs. The Funds will be required to comply with certain portions of the rule by December 1, 2018. The effect the rule will have on the Funds, including a Fund’s ability to rely on the exclusions, is not yet known, but the rule may impact a Fund’s performance and ability to achieve its investment objective.

**MISCELLANEOUS.** Securities may be purchased on margin only to obtain such short-term credits as necessary for the clearance of purchase and sales of securities.

**MORTGAGE DOLLAR ROLLS.** Each Fund may enter into mortgage “dollar rolls” in which a Fund sells securities for delivery in the current month and simultaneously contracts with the same counterparty to repurchase similar (same type, coupon and maturity), but not identical, securities on a specified future date. A Fund gives up the right to receive principal and interest paid on the securities sold. However, a Fund would benefit to the extent of any difference between the price received for the securities sold and the lower forward price for the future purchase (often referred to as the “drop”) or fee income plus the interest earned on the cash proceeds of the securities sold until the settlement date of the forward purchase. Unless such benefits exceed the income, capital appreciation, and gain or loss due to mortgage prepayments that would have been realized on the securities sold as part of the mortgage dollar roll, the use of this technique will diminish the investment performance of a Fund. Each Fund will hold and maintain in a segregated account until the settlement date cash or liquid assets in an amount equal to the forward purchase price. The benefits derived from the use of mortgage dollar rolls may depend upon the Investment Adviser’s ability to correctly predict mortgage prepayments and interest rates. There is no assurance that mortgage dollar rolls can be successfully employed.

For financial reporting and tax purposes, each Fund proposes to treat mortgage dollar rolls as two separate transactions; one transaction involving the purchase of a security and a separate transaction involving a sale. Each Fund currently does not intend to enter into mortgage dollar rolls that are accounted for as a financing.

Mortgage dollar rolls involve certain risks, including the following: if the broker-dealer to whom a Fund sells the security becomes insolvent, a Fund’s right to purchase or repurchase the mortgage-related securities subject to the mortgage dollar roll may be restricted. Also, the instrument that a Fund is required to repurchase may be worth less than an instrument which a Fund originally held. Successful use of mortgage dollar rolls will depend upon the Investment Adviser’s ability to manage a Fund’s interest rate and mortgage prepayments exposure. For these reasons, there is no assurance that mortgage dollar rolls can be successfully employed. The use of this technique may diminish the investment performance of a Fund compared with what such performance would have been without the use of mortgage dollar rolls.

**MUNICIPAL INSTRUMENTS.** The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund and the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund (through investment in Underlying Funds) may invest in municipal instruments. Opinions relating to the validity of municipal instruments and to federal and state tax issues relating to these securities are rendered by bond counsel to the respective issuing authorities at the time of issuance. Such opinions may contain various assumptions, qualifications or exceptions that are reasonably acceptable to the Investment Adviser. Neither the Trust nor the Investment Adviser will review the proceedings relating to the issuance of municipal instruments or the bases for such opinions.

Municipal instruments generally are issued to finance public works, such as airports, bridges, highways, housing, health-related entities, transportation-related projects, educational programs, water and pollution control and sewer works. They also are issued to repay outstanding obligations, to raise funds for general operating expenses and to make loans to other public institutions and for other facilities. Municipal instruments include private activity bonds issued by or on behalf of public authorities. Private activity bonds are or have been issued to obtain funds to provide, among other things, privately operated housing facilities, pollution control facilities, convention or trade show facilities, mass transit, airport, port or parking facilities and certain local facilities for water supply, gas, electricity or sewage or solid waste disposal. Private activity bonds also are issued to privately held or publicly owned corporations in the financing of commercial or industrial facilities.

State and local governments are authorized in most states to issue private activity bonds for such purposes in order to encourage corporations to locate within their communities. The principal and interest on these obligations may be payable from the general revenues of the users of such facilities.



Municipal instruments include both “general” and “revenue” obligations. General obligations are secured by the issuer’s pledge of its full faith, credit and taxing power for the payment of principal and interest. Revenue obligations are payable only from the revenues derived from a particular facility or class of facilities or, in some cases, from the proceeds of a special excise tax or other specific revenue source such as lease revenue payments from the user of the facility being financed. Industrial development bonds are in most cases revenue securities and are not payable from the unrestricted revenues of the issuer. Consequently, the credit quality of an industrial revenue bond usually is directly related to the credit standing of the private user of the facility involved.

Within the principal classifications of municipal instruments described above there are a variety of categories, including municipal bonds, municipal notes, municipal leases, asset-backed securities such as custodial receipts and participation certificates. Municipal notes include tax, revenue and bond anticipation notes of short maturity, generally less than three years, which are issued to obtain temporary funds for various public purposes. Municipal leases and participation certificates are obligations issued by state and local governments or authorities to finance the acquisition of equipment and facilities. Participation certificates may represent participation in a lease, an installment purchase contract, or a conditional sales contract. Certain municipal lease obligations (and related participation certificates) may include “non-appropriation” clauses which provide that the municipality has no obligation to make lease or installment purchase payments in future years unless money is appropriated for such purpose on a yearly basis. Custodial receipts are underwritten by securities dealers or banks and evidence ownership of future interest payments, principal payments or both on certain municipal securities. Municipal leases (and participations in such leases) present the risk that a municipality will not appropriate funds for the lease payments. In the case of the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund, the Investment Adviser will determine the credit quality of any unrated municipal leases on an ongoing basis, including an assessment of the likelihood that the leases will not be canceled.

The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund and an Underlying Fund, in the case of the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund, also may invest in “moral obligation” bonds, which normally are issued by special purpose public authorities. If the issuer of a moral obligation bond is unable to meet its debt service obligations from current revenues, it may draw on a reserve fund (if such a fund has been established), the restoration of which is a moral commitment, but not a legal obligation of the state or municipality which created the issuer.

Municipal bonds with a series of maturity dates are called serial bonds. The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund may purchase serial bonds and other long-term securities provided that they have remaining maturities meeting the Fund’s maturity requirements. The Fund also may purchase long-term variable and floating rate bonds (sometimes referred to as “put bonds”) where the Fund obtains at the time of purchase the right to put the bond back to the issuer or a third party at par at least every thirteen months. Put bonds with conditional puts (that is, puts which cannot be exercised if the issuer defaults on its payment obligations) will present risks that are different than those of other municipal instruments because of the possibility that the Fund might hold long term put bonds on which defaults occur following acquisition by the Fund.

The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund may acquire securities in the form of custodial receipts evidencing rights to receive a specific future interest payment, principal payment or both on certain municipal obligations. Such obligations are held in custody by a bank on behalf of the holders of the receipts. These custodial receipts are known by various names, including “Municipal Receipts,” “Municipal Certificates of Accrual on Tax-Exempt Securities” (“M-CATS”) and “Municipal Zero-Coupon Receipts.” The Fund also may purchase certificates of participation that, in the opinion of counsel to the issuer, are exempt from regular federal income tax. Certificates of participation are a type of floating or variable rate of obligation that represents interests in a pool of municipal obligations held by a bank.

The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund and an Underlying Fund, in the case of the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund, also may invest in “tax credit bonds.” A tax credit bond is defined in the Code, as a “qualified tax credit bond” (which includes a qualified forestry conservation bond, a new clean renewable energy bond, a qualified energy conservation bond, and a qualified zone academy bond, each of which must meet certain requirements specified in the Code), a “build America bond” (which includes certain qualified bonds issued before January 1, 2011) or certain other specified bonds. On December 22, 2017, the President signed into law H.R. 1, originally known as the “Tax Cuts and Jobs Act.” The law repeals the rules related to tax credit bonds and is effective for bonds issued after December 31, 2017, but does not affect the tax treatment of bonds issued prior January 1, 2018.

An issuer's obligations under its municipal instruments are subject to the provisions of bankruptcy, insolvency and other laws affecting the rights and remedies of creditors, such as the Federal Bankruptcy Code, and laws, if any, which may be enacted by federal or state legislatures extending the time for payment of principal or interest, or both, or imposing other constraints upon enforcement of such obligations or upon the ability of municipalities to levy taxes. The power or ability of an issuer to meet its obligations for the payment of interest on and principal of its municipal instruments may be materially adversely affected by litigation or other conditions.

From time to time, proposals have been introduced before Congress for the purpose of restricting or eliminating the federal income tax exemption for interest on municipal instruments. For example, under the Tax Reform Act of 1986, interest on certain private activity bonds must be included in an investor's federal alternative minimum taxable income, and corporate investors must include all tax-exempt interest in their federal alternative minimum taxable income. Also, under the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act, the rules related to credit tax bonds and the exclusion from gross income for interest on a bond issued to advance refund another bond were repealed. The Trust cannot predict what legislation, if any, may be proposed in the future in Congress as regards the federal income tax status of interest on municipal instruments or which proposals, if any, might be enacted. Such proposals, if enacted, might materially and adversely affect the availability of municipal instruments for investment by a fund and the fund's liquidity and value.

Certain of the municipal instruments held by a fund may be insured as to the timely payment of principal and interest. The insurance policies usually will be obtained by the issuer of the municipal instrument at the time of its original issuance. In the event that the issuer defaults on an interest or principal payment, the insurer will be notified and will be required to make payment to the bondholders. There is, however, no guarantee that the insurer will meet its obligations. In addition, such insurance will not protect against market fluctuations caused by changes in interest rates and other factors. Moreover, the insurers' exposure to securities involving subprime mortgages may cause a municipal bond insurer's rating to be downgraded or may cause the bond insurer to become insolvent, which may affect the prices and liquidity of municipal obligations insured by the insurance company. The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund may invest more than 25% of its total net assets in municipal instruments covered by insurance policies.

In addition, a single enhancement provider may provide credit enhancement to more than one of a fund's investments. Having multiple securities' credit enhanced by the same enhancement provider will increase the adverse effects on a fund that are likely to result from a downgrading of, or a default by, such an enhancement provider. Adverse developments in the banking or bond insurance industries also may negatively affect a fund. Bond insurers that provide credit enhancement for large segments of the fixed-income markets, particularly the municipal bond market, may be more susceptible to being downgraded or defaulting during recessions or similar period of economic stress. Municipal bonds may be covered by insurance that guarantees timely interest payments and repayment of principal on maturity. If a bond's insurer fails to fulfill its obligations or loses its credit rating, the value of the bond could drop. Insurance does not protect a fund or its shareholders from losses caused by declines in a bond's market value.

Municipal instruments purchased by a fund may be backed by letters of credit or other forms of credit enhancement issued by foreign (as well as domestic) banks and other financial institutions. A change in the credit quality of these banks and financial institutions could, therefore, cause loss to a fund that invests in municipal instruments. Letters of credit and other obligations of foreign financial institutions may involve certain risks in addition to those of domestic obligations.

The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund may invest in municipal leases, which may be considered liquid under guidelines established by the Trust's Board of Trustees. The guidelines will provide for determination of the liquidity of a municipal lease obligation based on factors including the following: (i) the frequency of trades and quotes for the obligation; (ii) the number of dealers willing to purchase or sell the security and the number of other potential buyers; (iii) the willingness of dealers to undertake to make a market in the security; and (iv) the nature of the marketplace trades, including the time needed to dispose of the security, the method of soliciting offers and the mechanics of transfer. The Investment Adviser, under guidelines approved by the Trust's Board of Trustees, also will consider the marketability of a municipal lease obligation based upon an analysis of the general credit quality of the municipality issuing the obligation and the essentiality to the municipality of the property covered by the lease.

**NON-DIVERSIFICATION RISK.** Non-diversification risk is the risk that a non-diversified Fund may be more susceptible to adverse financial, economic or other developments affecting any single issuer, and more susceptible to greater losses because of these developments. The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund is classified as "non-diversified" for purposes of the 1940 Act. A "non-diversified" classification means that the Fund is not limited by the 1940 Act with regard to the percentage of its assets that may be invested in the securities of a single issuer.

The Fund intends to maintain the required level of diversification and otherwise conduct its operations so as to qualify as a “regulated investment company” for purposes of the Code, and to relieve the Fund of any liability for federal income tax to the extent that its earnings are distributed to shareholders. Compliance with the diversification requirements of the Code may limit the investment flexibility of the Fund and may make it less likely that the Fund will meet its investment objective.

**OPERATIONAL RISK.** The Investment Adviser and other Fund service providers may experience disruptions or operating errors that could negatively impact the Funds. While service providers are required to have appropriate operational risk management policies and procedures, their methods of operational risk management may differ from the Funds’ in the setting of priorities, the personnel and resources available or the effectiveness of relevant controls. The Investment Adviser, through its monitoring and oversight of service providers, seeks to ensure that service providers take appropriate precautions to avoid and mitigate risks that could lead to disruptions and operating errors. However, it is not possible for the Investment Adviser or the other Fund service providers to identify all of the operational risks that may affect a Fund or to develop processes and controls to completely eliminate or mitigate their occurrence or effects.

**OPTIONS.** The FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund may buy put options, buy call options and write covered call and secured put options if NTI believes that it will help the Fund achieve its investment objective. These options may relate to particular securities, foreign and domestic stock indexes, financial instruments, or the yield differential between two securities (“yield curve options”) and may or may not be listed on a domestic or foreign securities exchange or issued by the Options Clearing Corporation. A call option for a particular security gives the purchaser of the option the right to buy, and a writer the obligation to sell, the underlying security at the stated exercise price prior to the expiration of the option, regardless of the market price of the security. The premium paid to the writer is in consideration for undertaking the obligation under the option contract. A put option for a particular security gives the purchaser the right to sell the security at the stated exercise price to the expiration date of the option, regardless of the market price of the security. In contrast to an option on a particular security, an option on an index provides the holder with the right to make or receive a cash settlement upon exercise of the option. The amount of this settlement will be equal to the difference between the closing price of the index at the time of exercise and the exercise price of the option expressed in dollars, times a specified multiple.

Options trading is a highly specialized activity, which entails greater than ordinary investment risk. Options on particular securities may be more volatile than the underlying instruments and, therefore, on a percentage basis, an investment in options may be subject to greater fluctuation than an investment in the underlying instruments themselves.

The Fund will write call options only if they are “covered.” In the case of a call option on a security, the option is “covered” if the Fund owns the security underlying the call or has an absolute and immediate right to acquire that security without additional cash consideration (or, if additional cash consideration is required, liquid assets in such amount are segregated) upon conversion or exchange of other securities held by it. For a call option on an index, the option is covered if the Fund maintains with its custodian a portfolio of securities substantially replicating the index, or liquid assets equal to the contract value. A call option also is covered if the Fund holds a call on the same security or index as the call written where the exercise price of the call held is: (i) equal to or less than the exercise price of the call written; or (ii) greater than the exercise price of the call written provided the Fund segregates liquid assets in the amount of the difference.

All put options written by the Fund would be covered, which means that the Fund will segregate cash or liquid assets with a value at least equal to the exercise price of the put option or will use the other methods described in the next sentence. A put option also is covered if the Fund holds a put option on the same security as the option written where the exercise price of the option held is: (i) equal to or higher than the exercise price of the option written; or (ii) less than the exercise price of the option written provided the Fund segregates liquid assets in the amount of the difference.

With respect to yield curve options, a call (or put) option is covered if the Fund holds another call (or put) option on the spread between the same two securities and segregates liquid assets sufficient to cover the Fund’s net liability under the two options. Therefore, the Fund’s liability for such a covered option generally is limited to the difference between the amount of the Fund’s liability under the option written by the Fund less the value of the option held by the Fund. Yield curve options also may be covered in such other manner as may be in accordance with the requirements of the counterparty with which the option is traded and applicable laws and regulations.

The Fund’s obligation to sell subject to a covered call option written by it, or to purchase a security subject to a secured put option written by it, may be terminated prior to the expiration date of the option by the Fund’s execution of a closing purchase transaction, which is effected by purchasing on an exchange an option of the same series (i.e., same underlying security, exercise price and expiration date) as the option previously written. Such a purchase does not result in the ownership of an option. A closing purchase transaction will ordinarily be effected to realize a profit on an outstanding option, to prevent an underlying instrument from being called, to permit the sale of the underlying security or to permit the writing of a new option containing

different terms on such underlying security. The cost of such a liquidation purchase plus transaction costs may be greater than the premium received upon the original option, in which event the Fund will have incurred a loss in the transaction. There is no assurance that a liquid secondary market will exist for any particular option. An option writer, unable to effect a closing purchase transaction, will not be able to sell the underlying security (in the case of a covered call option) or liquidate the segregated assets (in the case of a secured put option) until the option expires or the optioned security is delivered upon exercise with the result that the writer in such circumstances will be subject to the risk of market decline or appreciation in the instrument during such period.

When the Fund purchases an option, the premium paid by it is recorded as an asset of the Fund. When the Fund writes an option, an amount equal to the net premium (the premium less the commission) received by the Fund is included in the liability section of the Fund's statement of assets and liabilities as a deferred credit. The amount of this asset or deferred credit will be subsequently marked-to-market to reflect the current value of the option purchased or written. The current value of the traded option is the last sale price or, in the absence of a sale, the current bid price. If an option purchased by the Fund expires unexercised, the Fund realizes a loss equal to the premium paid. If the Fund enters into a closing sale transaction on an option purchased by it, the Fund will realize a gain if the premium received by the Fund on the closing transaction is more than the premium paid to purchase the option, or a loss if it is less. If an option written by the Fund expires on the stipulated expiration date or if the Fund enters into a closing purchase transaction, it will realize a gain (or loss if the cost of a closing purchase transaction exceeds the net premium received when the option is sold) and the deferred credit related to such option will be eliminated. If an option written by the Fund is exercised, the proceeds of the sale will be increased by the net premium originally received and the Fund will realize a gain or loss.

There are several risks associated with transactions in certain options. For example, there are significant differences between the securities and options markets that could result in an imperfect correlation between these markets, causing a given transaction not to achieve its objectives. In addition, a liquid secondary market for particular options, whether traded over-the-counter or on an exchange, may be absent for reasons which include the following: there may be insufficient trading interest in certain options; restrictions may be imposed by an exchange on opening transactions or closing transactions or both; trading halts, suspensions or other restrictions may be imposed with respect to particular classes or series of options or underlying securities or currencies; unusual or unforeseen circumstances may interrupt normal operations on an exchange; the facilities of an exchange or the Options Clearing Corporation may not at all times be adequate to handle current trading value; or one or more exchanges could, for economic or other reasons, decide or be compelled at some future date to discontinue the trading of options (or a particular class or series of options), in which event the secondary market on that exchange (or in that class or series of options) would cease to exist, although outstanding options that had been issued by the Options Clearing Corporation as a result of trades on that exchange would continue to be exercisable in accordance with their terms.

**REPURCHASE AGREEMENTS.** To the extent consistent with its investment policies, each Fund may agree to purchase portfolio securities from financial institutions subject to the seller's agreement to repurchase them at a mutually agreed upon date and price ("repurchase agreements"). Repurchase agreements are considered to be loans under the 1940 Act. Although the securities subject to a repurchase agreement may bear maturities exceeding one year, settlement for the repurchase agreement will never be more than one year after the Fund's acquisition of the securities and normally will be within a shorter period of time. Securities subject to repurchase agreements normally are held either by the Trust's custodian or sub-custodian (if any), or in the Federal Reserve/Treasury Book-Entry System. The seller under a repurchase agreement will be required to maintain the value of the securities subject to the agreement in an amount exceeding the repurchase price (including accrued interest). Default by the seller would, however, expose a Fund to possible loss because of adverse market action or delay in connection with the disposition of the underlying obligations. In addition, in the event of a bankruptcy, a Fund could suffer additional losses if a court determines that the Fund's interest in the collateral is unenforceable. If a Fund enters into a repurchase agreement with a foreign financial institution, it may also be subject to risks associated with foreign investments. (see "Foreign Investments – General" above.)

**REVERSE REPURCHASE AGREEMENTS.** To the extent consistent with its investment policies, a Fund may borrow funds by selling portfolio securities to financial institutions such as banks and broker/dealers and agreeing to repurchase them at a mutually specified date and price ("reverse repurchase agreements"). The Funds may use the proceeds of reverse repurchase agreements to purchase other securities either maturing, or under an agreement to resell, on a date simultaneous with or prior to the expiration of the reverse repurchase agreement. Reverse repurchase agreements are considered to be borrowings under the 1940 Act. Reverse repurchase agreements involve the risk that the market value of the securities sold by the Fund may decline below the repurchase price. The Funds will pay interest on amounts obtained pursuant to a reverse repurchase agreement. While reverse repurchase agreements are outstanding, the Funds will segregate liquid assets in an amount at least equal to the market value of the securities, plus accrued interest, subject to the agreement.

**RISKS RELATED TO MEDIUM AND LOWER QUALITY SECURITIES.** To the extent consistent with its investment objectives and strategies, Each Fund may invest in or hold medium and lower quality securities. Fixed-income

securities rated Baa3 or BBB- are considered medium quality obligations with speculative characteristics. Fixed-income securities rated below Baa3 or BBB- are considered lower quality and are regarded as having significant speculative characteristics. Investment grade bonds are rated at least Baa3 by Moody's Investor Service, Inc. ("Moody's") or BBB- by Standard & Poors Rating Service ("S&P"), the equivalent by another NRSRO or, if unrated, of equal quality in the opinion of the Investment Adviser. Investments in medium and lower quality securities present special risk considerations. Medium quality securities, although considered investment grade, also are considered to have speculative characteristics. Lower quality securities are considered predominantly speculative by traditional investment standards. In some cases, these lower quality obligations may be highly speculative and have poor prospects for reaching investment grade standard. While any investment carries some risk, certain risks associated with lower quality securities are different than those for investment-grade securities. The risk of loss through default is greater because lower quality securities usually are unsecured and are often subordinate to an issuer's other obligations. Additionally, the issuers of these securities frequently have high debt levels and are thus more sensitive to difficult economic conditions, individual corporate developments and rising interest rates. Consequently, the market price of these securities may be quite volatile and may result in wider fluctuations of the Fund's NAV per share.

There remains some uncertainty about the performance level of the market for lower quality securities under adverse market and economic environments. An economic downturn or increase in interest rates could have a negative impact on both the market for lower quality securities (resulting in a greater number of bond defaults) and the value of lower quality securities held in the portfolio of investments.

The economy and interest rates can affect lower quality securities differently than other securities. For example, the prices of lower quality securities are more sensitive to adverse economic changes or individual corporate developments than are the prices of higher quality investments. In addition, during an economic downturn or period in which interest rates are rising significantly, highly leveraged issuers may experience financial difficulties, which, in turn, would adversely affect their ability to service their principal and interest payment obligations, meet projected business goals and obtain additional financing.

The market value of lower quality securities tends to reflect individual corporate developments to a greater extent than that of higher quality securities, which react primarily to fluctuations in the general level of interest rates. Lower quality securities are often issued in connection with a corporate reorganization or restructuring or as a part of a merger, acquisition, takeover or similar event. They also are issued by less established companies seeking to expand. Such issuers are often highly leveraged, may not have available to them more traditional methods of financing and generally are less able than more established or less leveraged entities to make scheduled payments of principal and interest in the event of adverse economic developments or business conditions.

A holder's risk of loss from default is significantly greater for lower quality securities than is the case for holders of other debt securities because such securities generally are unsecured and are often subordinated to the rights of other creditors of the issuers of such securities. Investment by a Fund in defaulted securities poses additional risk of loss should nonpayment of principal and interest continue in respect of such securities. Even if such securities are held to maturity, recovery by a Fund of its initial investment and any anticipated income or appreciation will be uncertain. A Fund also may incur additional expenses in seeking recovery on defaulted securities. If an issuer of a security defaults, a Fund may incur additional expenses to seek recovery. In addition, periods of economic uncertainty would likely result in increased volatility for the market prices of lower quality securities as well as a Fund's NAV. In general, both the prices and yields of lower quality securities will fluctuate.

The secondary market for lower quality securities is concentrated in relatively few market makers and is dominated by institutional investors, including mutual funds, insurance companies and other financial institutions. Accordingly, the secondary market for such securities is not as liquid as, and is more volatile than, the secondary market for higher quality securities. In addition, market trading volume for high yield fixed-income securities generally is lower and the secondary market for such securities could contract under adverse market or economic conditions, independent of any specific adverse changes in the condition of a particular issuer. These factors may have an adverse effect on the market price and a Fund's ability to dispose of particular portfolio investments. A less developed secondary market also may make it more difficult for a Fund to obtain precise valuations of the high yield securities in its portfolio.

The adoption of new legislation could adversely affect the secondary market for high yield securities and the financial condition of issuers of these securities. The form of any future legislation, and the probability of such legislation being enacted, is uncertain.

In certain circumstances, it may be difficult to determine a security's fair value due to a lack of reliable objective information. Such instances occur where there is not an established secondary market for the security or the security is lightly traded. As a result, a Fund's valuation of a security and the price it is actually able to obtain when it sells the security could differ.

Adverse publicity and investor perceptions, whether or not based on fundamental analysis, may decrease the value and liquidity of lower-quality convertible securities held by a Fund, especially in a thinly traded market. Illiquid or restricted securities held by a Fund may involve special registration responsibilities, liabilities and costs, and could involve other liquidity and valuation difficulties.

The ratings of S&P, Dominion Bond Rating Service Limited (“Dominion”), Moody’s and Fitch evaluate the safety of a lower quality security’s principal and interest payments, but do not address market value risk. Because the ratings of the rating agencies may not always reflect current conditions and events, in addition to using recognized rating agencies and other sources, the Investment Adviser performs its own analysis of the issuers whose lower quality securities the Fund purchases. Because of this, a Fund’s performance may depend more on the Investment Adviser’s credit analysis than is the case of funds investing in higher quality securities.

In determining whether a Fund should continue to hold a security that has been downgraded to a lower quality security subsequent to its purchase by a Fund, the Investment Adviser considers factors such as those relating to the creditworthiness of issuers, the ratings and performance of the securities, the protections afforded the securities and the diversity of a Fund’s investment portfolio. The Investment Adviser monitors the issuers of lower quality securities held by a Fund for their ability to make required principal and interest payments, as well as in an effort to control the liquidity of a Fund so that it can meet redemption requests.

**SECURITIES LENDING.** In order to generate additional income, a Fund may lend securities to banks, brokers and dealers or other qualified institutions. In exchange, the Fund will receive collateral equal to at least 100% of the value of the securities loaned. Securities lending may represent no more than one-third of the value of the Fund’s total assets (including the loan collateral).

Collateral for loans of portfolio securities made by a Fund may consist of cash, cash equivalents, securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. government or its agencies or foreign governments (or any combination thereof). Any cash collateral received by the Fund in connection with these loans may be invested in a variety of short-term investments, either directly or indirectly through registered or unregistered money market funds. Loan collateral (including any investment of the collateral) is not included in the calculation of the percentage limitations described elsewhere in the Prospectus or SAI regarding a Fund’s investments in particular types of securities. The borrower of securities will be required to maintain the market value of the collateral at not less than the market value of the loaned securities, and such value will be monitored on a daily basis.

When a Fund lends its securities, it continues to receive payments equal to the dividends and interest paid on the securities loaned and simultaneously may earn interest on the investment of the cash collateral. Investing the collateral subjects it to market depreciation or appreciation, and the Fund is responsible for any loss that may result from its investment in borrowed collateral. Additionally, the amount of a Fund’s distributions that qualify for taxation at reduced long-term capital gains rates for individuals, as well as the amount of the Fund’s distributions that qualify for the dividends received deduction available to corporate shareholders (together, “qualifying dividends”) may be reduced as a result of the Fund’s securities lending activities. This is because any dividends paid on securities while on loan will not be deemed to have been received by the Fund, and the equivalent amount paid to the Fund by the borrower of the securities will not be deemed to be a qualifying dividend.

A Fund will have the right to terminate a loan at any time and recall the loaned securities within the normal and customary settlement time for securities transactions. Although voting rights, or rights to consent, attendant to securities on loan pass to the borrower, such loans may be called so that the securities may be voted by the Fund if a material event affecting the investment is to occur. As with other extensions of credit there are risks of delay in recovering, or even loss of rights in, the collateral should the borrower of the securities fail financially. In the event of a default by a borrower with respect to any loan, the securities lending agent will exercise any and all remedies provided under the applicable borrower agreement. These remedies include purchasing replacement securities for the Fund by applying the collateral held from the defaulting borrower against the purchase cost of the replacement securities. If the proceeds from the collateral are less than the purchase cost of the replacement securities, the securities lending agent is responsible for such shortfall, subject to certain limitations that are set forth in detail in the securities lending agency agreement. In this event, a Fund could experience delays in recovering its securities and possibly may incur a capital loss.

JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A. (“JPMorgan”) serves as securities lending agent for the Funds. For such services, JPMorgan receives a percentage of securities lending revenue generated for the Funds.

**SHORT-TERM INSTRUMENTS AND TEMPORARY INVESTMENTS.** Each Fund may invest in short-term instruments, including money market instruments, on an ongoing basis to provide liquidity or for other reasons. Money market instruments are generally short-term investments that may include but are not limited to: (i) shares of money market funds

(including those advised by NTI); (ii) obligations issued or guaranteed by the U.S. government, its agencies or instrumentalities (including government-sponsored enterprises); (iii) negotiable certificates of deposit (“CDs”), bankers’ acceptances, fixed time deposits, bank notes and other obligations of U.S. and foreign banks (including foreign branches) and similar institutions; (iv) commercial paper rated at the date of purchase “Prime-1” by Moody’s, “A-1” by S&P or, if unrated, of comparable quality as determined by NTI; (v) non-convertible corporate debt securities (e.g., bonds and debentures) with remaining maturities at the date of purchase of not more than 397 days and that satisfy the rating requirements set forth in Rule 2a-7 under the 1940 Act; (vi) repurchase agreements; and (vii) short-term U.S. dollar-denominated obligations of foreign banks (including U.S. branches) that, in the opinion of NTI, are of comparable quality to obligations of U.S. banks which may be purchased by the Fund. Any of these instruments may be purchased on a current or a forward-settled basis.

Time deposits are non-negotiable deposits maintained in banking institutions for specified periods of time at stated interest rates. Bankers’ acceptances are time drafts drawn on commercial banks by borrowers, usually in connection with international transactions. Commercial paper represents short-term unsecured promissory notes issued in bearer form by banks or bank holding companies, corporations and finance companies. Certificates of deposit are negotiable certificates issued against funds deposited in a commercial bank for a definite period of time and earning a specified return. Bankers’ acceptances are negotiable drafts or bills of exchange, normally drawn by an importer or exporter to pay for specific merchandise, which are “accepted” by a bank, meaning, in effect, that the bank unconditionally agrees to pay the face value of the instrument on maturity. Fixed time deposits are bank obligations payable at a stated maturity date and bearing interest at a fixed rate. Fixed time deposits may be withdrawn on demand by the investor, but may be subject to early withdrawal penalties that vary depending upon market conditions and the remaining maturity of the obligation. There are no contractual restrictions on the right to transfer a beneficial interest in a fixed time deposit to a third party. Bank notes generally rank junior to deposit liabilities of banks and pari passu with other senior, unsecured obligations of the bank. Bank notes are classified as “other borrowings” on a bank’s balance sheet, while deposit notes and certificates of deposit are classified as deposits. Bank notes are not insured by the FDIC or any other insurer. Deposit notes are insured by the FDIC only to the extent of \$250,000 per depositor per bank.

**STANDBY COMMITMENTS.** Each Fund may enter into standby commitments with respect to municipal instruments held by the Fund. Under a standby commitment, a dealer agrees to purchase at the Fund’s option a specified municipal instrument. Standby commitments may be exercisable by the Fund at any time before the maturity of the underlying municipal instruments and may be sold, transferred or assigned only with the instruments involved.

The Funds expect that standby commitments generally will be available without the payment of any direct or indirect consideration. However, if necessary or advisable, the Funds may pay for a standby commitment either separately in cash or by paying a higher price for municipal instruments which are acquired subject to the commitment (thus reducing the yield to maturity otherwise available for the same securities). The total amount paid in either manner for outstanding standby commitments held by the Funds will not exceed one half of 1% of the value of the Fund’s total assets calculated immediately after each standby commitment is acquired.

Each Fund intends to enter into standby commitments only with dealers, banks and broker-dealers which, in the Investment Adviser’s opinion, present minimal credit risks. A Fund will acquire standby commitments solely to facilitate portfolio liquidity and do not intend to exercise their rights thereunder for trading purposes. The acquisition of a standby commitment will not affect the valuation of the underlying municipal instrument. The actual standby commitment will be valued at zero in determining NAV. Accordingly, where a Fund pays directly or indirectly for a standby commitment, a Fund’s costs will be reflected as an unrealized loss for the period during which the commitment is held by a Fund and will be reflected in realized gain or loss when the commitment is exercised or expires.

**STRIPPED SECURITIES.** To the extent consistent with its investment policies, each Fund may purchase stripped securities. The Treasury Department has facilitated transfers of ownership of zero coupon securities by accounting separately for the beneficial ownership of particular interest coupon and principal payments on Treasury securities through the Federal Reserve book-entry record-keeping system. The Federal Reserve program as established by the Treasury Department is known as “Separate Trading of Registered Interest and Principal of Securities” or “STRIPS.” The Funds may purchase securities registered in the STRIPS program. Under the STRIPS program, the Fund will be able to have its beneficial ownership of zero coupon securities recorded directly in the book-entry record-keeping system in lieu of having to hold certificates or other evidences of ownership of the underlying U.S. Treasury securities.

Other types of stripped securities may be purchased by the Funds, including stripped mortgage-backed securities (“SMBS”). SMBS usually are structured with two or more classes that receive different proportions of the interest and principal distributions from a pool of mortgage-backed obligations. A common type of SMBS will have one class receiving all of the interest, while the other class receives all of the principal. However, in some instances, one class will receive some of the interest

and most of the principal while the other class will receive most of the interest and the remainder of the principal. If the underlying obligations experience greater than anticipated prepayments of principal, the Fund may fail to recoup fully its initial investment in these securities. The market value of the class consisting entirely of principal payments generally is extremely volatile in response to changes in interest rates. The yields on a class of SMBS that receives all or most of the interest generally are higher than prevailing market yields on other mortgage-backed obligations because their cash flow patterns also are volatile and there is a risk that the initial investment will not be recouped fully. SMBS issued by the U.S. government (or a U.S. government agency, instrumentality or sponsored enterprise) may be considered liquid under guidelines established by the Trust's Board of Trustees if they can be disposed of promptly in the ordinary course of business at a value reasonably close to that used in the calculation of the NAV per share.

**STRUCTURED SECURITIES.** To the extent consistent with its investment objective and strategies, each Fund may purchase structured securities. These fixed-income instruments are structured to recast the investment characteristics of the underlying security or reference asset. If the issuer is a unit investment trust or other special purpose vehicle, the structuring will typically involve the deposit with or purchase by such issuer of specified instruments (such as commercial bank loans or securities) and/or the execution of various derivative transactions, and the issuance by that entity of one or more classes of securities (structured securities) backed by, or representing interests in, the underlying instruments. The cash flow on the underlying instruments may be apportioned among the newly issued structured securities to create securities with different investment characteristics, such as varying maturities, payment priorities and interest rate provisions, and the extent of such payments made with respect to structured securities is dependent on the extent of the cash flow on the underlying instruments. Investments in these securities may be structured as a class that is either subordinated or unsubordinated to the right of payment of another class. Subordinated structured securities typically have higher rates of return and present greater risks than unsubordinated structured products.

Each Fund's investments in these instruments are indirectly subject to the risks associated with derivative instruments, including, among others, credit risk, default or similar event risk, counterparty risk, interest rate risk, leverage risk and management risk. Because structured securities typically involve no credit enhancement, their credit risk generally will be equivalent to that of the underlying instruments. These securities generally are exempt from registration under the Securities Act. Accordingly, there may be no established trading market for the securities and they may constitute illiquid investments. Structured securities may entail a greater degree of market risk than other types of debt securities because the investor bears the risk of the underlying security or reference asset. Structured securities may also be more volatile, less liquid, and more difficult to price accurately than less complex securities or more traditional debt securities.

**SUPRANATIONAL BANK OBLIGATIONS.** Each Fund, to the extent consistent with its investment objective and strategies, may invest in obligations of supranational banks. Supranational banks are international banking institutions designed or supported by national governments to promote economic reconstruction, development or trade among nations (e.g., the World Bank). Obligations of supranational banks may be supported by appropriated but unpaid commitments of their member countries and there is no assurance that these commitments will be undertaken or met in the future.

**TRUST PREFERRED SECURITIES.** Each Fund may invest in trust preferred securities. Trust preferred securities have the characteristics of both subordinated debt and preferred stock. Generally, trust preferred securities are issued by a trust that is wholly-owned by a financial institution or other corporate entity, typically a bank holding company. The financial institution creates the trust and owns the trust's common securities. The trust uses the sale proceeds of its common securities to purchase subordinated debt issued by the financial institution. The financial institution uses the proceeds from the subordinated debt sale to increase its capital while the trust receives periodic interest payments from the financial institution for holding the subordinated debt. The trust uses the funds received to make dividend payments to the holders of the trust preferred securities. The primary advantage of this structure is that the trust preferred securities are treated by the financial institution as debt securities for tax purposes and as equity for the calculation of capital requirements.

Trust preferred securities typically bear a market rate coupon comparable to interest rates available on debt of a similarly rated issuer. Typical characteristics include long-term maturities, early redemption by the issuer, periodic fixed or variable interest payments, and maturities at face value. Holders of trust preferred securities have limited voting rights to control the activities of the trust and no voting rights with respect to the financial institution. The market value of trust preferred securities may be more volatile than those of conventional debt securities. Trust preferred securities may be issued in reliance on Rule 144A under the Securities Act and subject to restrictions on resale. There can be no assurance as to the liquidity of trust preferred securities and the ability of holders, such as the Fund, to sell their holdings. In identifying the risks of the trust preferred securities, NTI will look to the condition of the financial institution as the trust typically has no business operations other than to issue the trust preferred securities. If the financial institution defaults on interest payments to the trust, the trust will not be able to make dividend payments to holders of its securities, such as the Funds.



**U.S. GOVERNMENT OBLIGATIONS.** Each Fund may invest in a variety of U.S. Treasury obligations and obligations issued by or guaranteed by the U.S. government or by its agencies, instrumentalities or sponsored enterprises. Not all government obligations carry the same credit support. No assurance can be given that the U.S. government would provide financial support to its agencies, instrumentalities or sponsored enterprises if it were not obligated to do so by law. There is no assurance that these commitments will be undertaken or complied with in the future. In addition, the secondary market for certain participations in loans made to foreign governments or their agencies may be limited. In the absence of a suitable secondary market, such participations generally are considered illiquid.

Many states grant tax-free status to dividends paid to shareholders of a fund from interest income earned by that fund from direct obligations of the U.S. government, subject in some states to minimum investment requirements that must be met by the fund. Investments in securities issued by Ginnie Mae or Fannie Mae, bankers' acceptances, commercial paper and repurchase agreements collateralized by U.S. government securities do not generally qualify for tax-free treatment.

Examples of U.S. government obligations that may be acquired include U.S. Treasury Bills, Treasury Notes and Treasury Bonds and the obligations of Federal Home Loan Banks, Federal Farm Credit Banks, Federal Land Banks, the Federal Housing Administration, Farmers Home Administration, Export-Import Bank of the United States, Small Business Administration, the Federal National Mortgage Association, the Government National Mortgage Association, General Services Administration, Central Bank for Cooperatives, the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation, Federal Intermediate Credit Banks and the Maritime Administration.

Securities guaranteed as to principal and interest by the U.S. government or by its agencies, instrumentalities or sponsored enterprises also are deemed to include: (i) securities for which the payment of principal and interest is backed by an irrevocable letter of credit issued by the U.S. government or by any agency, instrumentality or sponsored enterprise thereof; and (ii) participations in loans made to foreign governments or their agencies that are so guaranteed.

**VARIABLE AND FLOATING RATE INSTRUMENTS.** Variable and floating rate instruments have interest rates that periodically are adjusted either at set intervals or that float at a margin in relation to a generally recognized index rate. These instruments include long-term variable and floating rate bonds where the Fund obtains at the time of purchase the right to put the bond back to the issuer or a third party at par at a specified date and also includes leveraged inverse floating rate instruments ("inverse floaters"). With respect to the variable and floating rate instruments that may be acquired by the Funds, the Investment Adviser will consider the earning power, cash flows and other liquidity ratios of the issuers and guarantors of such instruments and, if the instruments are subject to demand features, will monitor their financial status and ability to meet payment on demand. Where necessary to ensure that a variable or floating rate instrument meets the Funds' quality requirements, the issuer's obligation to pay the principal of the instrument will be backed by an unconditional bank letter or line of credit, guarantee or commitment to lend.

The Funds will invest in variable and floating rate instruments only when the Investment Adviser deems the investment to involve minimal credit risk. Unrated variable and floating rate instruments will be determined by the Investment Adviser to be of comparable quality at the time of the purchase to rated instruments that may be purchased by a Fund. In determining weighted average portfolio maturity, an instrument may, subject to the SEC's regulations, be deemed to have a maturity shorter than its nominal maturity based on the period remaining until the next interest rate adjustment or the time the Fund can recover payment of principal as specified in the instrument. Variable and floating rate instruments eligible for purchase by a Fund include variable amount master demand notes, which permit the indebtedness thereunder to vary in addition to providing for periodic adjustments in the interest rate.

Variable and floating rate instruments also include leveraged inverse floaters. The interest rate on an inverse floater resets in the opposite direction from the market rate of interest to which the inverse floater is indexed. An inverse floater may be considered to be leveraged to the extent that its interest rate varies by a magnitude that exceeds the magnitude of the change in the index rate of interest. The higher degree of leverage inherent in inverse floaters is associated with greater volatility in their market values. Accordingly, the duration of an inverse floater may exceed its stated final maturity. The Funds may deem the maturity of variable and floating rate instruments to be less than their stated maturities based on their variable and floating rate features and/or their put features. Unrated variable and floating rate instruments will be determined by the Investment Adviser to be of comparable quality at the time of purchase to rated instruments which may be purchased by the Funds.

Variable and floating rate instruments including inverse floaters held by the Funds will be subject to the Funds' limitation on illiquid investments, absent a reliable trading market, when the Fund may not demand payment of the principal amount within seven days. Because there is no active secondary market for certain variable and floating rate instruments, they may be more difficult to sell if the issuer defaults on its payment obligations or during periods when a Fund is not entitled to exercise its demand rights. As a result, a Fund could suffer a loss with respect to these instruments.

**WARRANTS.** To the extent consistent with its investment objective, each Fund may purchase warrants and similar rights, which are privileges issued by corporations enabling the owners to subscribe to and purchase a specified number of shares of the corporation at a specified price during a specified period of time. The prices of warrants do not necessarily correlate with the prices of the underlying shares. The purchase of warrants involves the risk that a Fund could lose the purchase value of a warrant if the right to subscribe to additional shares is not exercised prior to the warrant's expiration. Also, the purchase of warrants involves the risk that the effective price paid for the warrant added to the subscription price of the related security may exceed the value of the subscribed security's market price such as when there is no movement in the level of the underlying security.

**YIELDS AND RATINGS.** The yields on certain obligations, including the instruments in which the Funds may invest, are dependent on a variety of factors, including general market conditions, conditions in the particular market for the obligation, financial condition of the issuer, size of the offering, maturity of the obligation and ratings of the issue. The ratings of S&P, DBRS Ratings Limited, Moody's and Fitch represent their respective opinions as to the quality of the obligations they undertake to rate. Ratings, however, are general and are not absolute standards of quality. Consequently, obligations with the same rating, maturity and interest rate may have different market prices. For a discussion of more complete ratings, see Appendix C to this SAI.

**ZERO COUPON AND CAPITAL APPRECIATION BONDS AND PAY-IN-KIND SECURITIES.** Each Fund may invest in zero coupon bonds, capital appreciation bonds and pay-in-kind ("PIK") securities. Zero coupon and capital appreciation bonds are debt securities issued or sold at a discount from their face value and which do not entitle the holder to any periodic payment of interest prior to maturity or a specified date. The original issue discount varies depending on the time remaining until maturity or cash payment date, prevailing interest rates, the liquidity of the security and the perceived credit quality of the issuer. These securities also may take the form of debt securities that have been stripped of their unmatured interest coupons, the coupons themselves or receipts or certificates representing interests in such stripped debt obligations or coupons. The market prices of zero coupon bonds, capital appreciation bonds and PIK securities generally are more volatile than the market prices of interest bearing securities and are likely to respond to a greater degree to changes in interest rates than interest bearing securities having similar maturities and credit quality.

PIK securities may be debt obligations or preferred shares that provide the issuer with the option of paying interest or dividends on such obligations in cash or in the form of additional securities rather than cash. Similar to zero coupon bonds, PIK securities are designed to give an issuer flexibility in managing cash flow. PIK securities that are debt securities can either be senior or subordinated debt and generally trade flat (i.e., without accrued interest). The trading price of PIK debt securities generally reflects the market value of the underlying debt plus an amount representing accrued interest since the last interest payment.

Zero coupon bonds, capital appreciation bonds and PIK securities involve the additional risk that, unlike securities that periodically pay interest to maturity, a Fund will realize no cash until a specified future payment date unless a portion of such securities is sold and, if the issuer of such securities defaults, the Fund may obtain no return at all on its investment. In addition, even though such securities do not provide for the payment of current interest in cash, the Fund is nonetheless required to accrue income on such investments for each taxable year and generally is required to distribute such accrued amounts (net of deductible expenses, if any) to avoid being subject to tax. Because no cash generally is received at the time of the accrual, a Fund may be required to liquidate other portfolio securities to obtain sufficient cash to satisfy federal tax distribution requirements applicable to the Fund.

## **INVESTMENT RESTRICTIONS**

The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Fund is subject to the fundamental investment restrictions enumerated below, which may be changed with respect to a particular Fund only by a vote of the holders of a majority of the Fund's outstanding shares as described in "Description of Shares" on page 55.

The Fund may not:

- 1) Make loans, except through (a) the purchase of debt obligations in accordance with the Fund's investment objective and strategies, (b) repurchase agreements with banks, brokers, dealers and other financial institutions, (c) loans of securities, and (d) loans to affiliates of the Fund to the extent permitted by law.
- 2) Purchase or sell real estate or real estate limited partnerships, but this restriction shall not prevent the Fund from investing directly or indirectly in portfolio instruments secured by real estate or interests therein or from acquiring securities of real estate investment trusts or other issuers that deal in real estate.

- 3) Purchase or sell physical commodities unless acquired as a result of ownership of securities or other instruments (but this shall not prevent the Fund (i) from purchasing or selling options, futures contracts or other derivative instruments, or (ii) from investing in securities or other instruments backed by physical commodities).
- 4) Act as underwriter of securities, except as the Fund may be deemed to be an underwriter under the Securities Act in connection with the purchase and sale of portfolio instruments in accordance with its investment objective and portfolio management strategies.
- 5) Borrow money, except (i) that to the extent permitted by applicable law (a) the Fund may borrow from banks, other affiliated investment companies and other persons, and may engage in reverse repurchase agreements and other transactions which involve borrowings, in amounts up to 33 1/3% of its total assets (including the amount borrowed) or such other percentage permitted by law, (b) the Fund may borrow up to an additional 5% of its total assets for temporary purposes, (c) the Fund may obtain such short-term credits as may be necessary for the clearance of purchases and sales of portfolio securities, and (d) the Fund may purchase securities on margin; and (ii) that (a) collateral arrangements in connection with short sales, options, futures, options on futures or other permitted investment practices and collateral arrangements with respect to initial or variation margin for such transaction will not be deemed to be a pledge or other encumbrance of the Fund's assets, and (b) assets held in escrow or in a separate account in connection with the Fund's permitted investment practices will not be considered to be borrowings or deemed to be a pledge or other encumbrance of the Fund's assets. If due to market fluctuations or other reasons the Fund's borrowings exceed the limitations stated above, the Trust will promptly reduce the borrowings of the Fund in accordance with the 1940 Act.
- 6) Issue any senior security, except as permitted under the 1940 Act, as amended and as interpreted, modified or otherwise permitted by regulatory authority having jurisdiction, from time to time.
- 7) Concentrate its investments (*i.e.*, invest 25% or more of its total assets in the securities of a particular industry or group of industries). For purposes of this limitation, securities of the U.S. government (including its agencies and instrumentalities), repurchase agreements collateralized by U.S. government securities, and securities of state or municipal governments and their political subdivisions are not considered to be issued by members of any industry.

The following fundamental investment restrictions, which may be changed only by a vote of the holder of a majority of a Fund's outstanding shares as described in "Description of Shares" on page 55, apply only to FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund.

The Fund may not:

- 1) Make loans, except to the extent permitted under the 1940 Act, rules and regulations thereunder or any exemption therefrom as such statute, rules or regulations may be amended or interpreted from time to time.
- 2) Purchase or sell real estate, except to the extent permitted under the 1940 Act, rules and regulations thereunder or any exemption therefrom as such statute, rules or regulations may be amended or interpreted from time to time.
- 3) Purchase or sell commodities, except to the extent permitted under the 1940 Act, rules and regulations thereunder or any exemption therefrom as such statute, rules or regulations may be amended or interpreted from time to time.
- 4) Act as underwriter of securities, except to the extent permitted under the 1940 Act, rules and regulations thereunder or any exemption therefrom as such statute, rules or regulations may be amended or interpreted from time to time.
- 5) Borrow money, except to the extent permitted under the 1940 Act, rules and regulations thereunder or any exemption therefrom as such statute, rules or regulations may be amended or interpreted from time to time.
- 6) Issue any senior security, except to the extent permitted under the 1940 Act, rules and regulations thereunder or any exemption therefrom as such statute, rules or regulations may be amended or interpreted from time to time.
- 7) Concentrate its investments (*i.e.*, invest 25% or more of its total assets in the securities of a particular industry or group of industries), except that the Fund will concentrate to approximately the same extent that its Underlying Index concentrates in the securities of such particular industry or group of industries. For purposes of this limitation, securities of the U.S. government (including its agencies and instrumentalities), repurchase agreements collateralized by U.S. government securities, and securities of state or municipal governments and their political subdivisions are not considered to be issued by members of any industry.

- 8) With respect to 75% of the Fund's assets (i) purchase securities of any issuer (except securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. Government, its agencies or instrumentalities and repurchase agreements involving such securities) if, as a result, more than 5% of the total assets of the Fund would be invested in the securities of any one issuer, or (ii) acquire more than 10% of the outstanding voting securities of any one issuer.

The following descriptions from the 1940 Act may assist shareholders in understanding the above policies and restrictions.

**Borrowing.** The 1940 Act presently allows a fund to borrow from any bank (including pledging, mortgaging or hypothecating assets) in an amount up to 33-1/3% of its total assets, including the amount borrowed (not including temporary borrowings not in excess of 5% of its total assets).

**Senior Securities.** Senior securities may include any obligation or instrument issued by a fund evidencing indebtedness.

The 1940 Act generally prohibits funds from issuing senior securities, although it does not treat certain transactions as senior securities, such as certain borrowings, short sales, reverse repurchase agreements, firm commitment agreements and standby commitments, with appropriate earmarking or segregation of assets to cover such obligation.

**Lending.** Under the 1940 Act, a fund may only make loans if expressly permitted by its investment policies.

**Underwriting.** Under the 1940 Act, underwriting securities involves a fund purchasing securities directly from an issuer for the purpose of selling (distributing) them or participating in any such activity either directly or indirectly.

**Real Estate.** The 1940 Act does not directly restrict a fund's ability to invest in real estate, but does require that every fund have a fundamental investment policy governing such investments.

**Commodities.** The 1940 Act does not directly restrict a fund's ability to invest in commodities, but does require that every fund have a fundamental investment policy governing such investments. The Fund has adopted a fundamental policy that would permit direct investment in commodities. However, the Fund has a non-fundamental investment limitation that prohibits it from investing directly in physical commodities. This non-fundamental policy may be changed only by vote of the Fund's Board.

The following investment restrictions are non-fundamental policies of the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund and may be changed by the Board without a vote of shareholders:

The Fund may not:

- 1) Make loans, except through: (a) the purchase of debt obligations in accordance with the Fund's investment objective and strategies; (b) repurchase agreements with banks, brokers, dealers and other financial institutions; (c) loans of securities; and (d) loans to affiliates of the Funds to the extent permitted by law.
- 2) Purchase or sell real estate or real estate limited partnerships, but this restriction shall not prevent the Fund from (a) investing directly or indirectly in portfolio instruments secured by real estate or interests therein; (b) from acquiring securities of real estate investment trusts or other issuers that deal in real estate or mortgage-related securities; or (c) holding and selling real estate acquired by the Fund as a result of ownership of securities.
- 3) Purchase or sell physical commodities unless acquired as a result of ownership of securities or other instruments (but this shall not prevent the Fund: (i) from purchasing or selling options, futures contracts or other derivative instruments; or (ii) from investing in securities or other instruments backed by physical commodities)
- 4) Act as underwriter of securities, except as the Fund may be deemed to be an underwriter under the Securities Act in connection with the purchase and sale of portfolio instruments in accordance with its investment objective and portfolio management strategies.
- 5) Borrow money, except that to the extent permitted by applicable law: (a) the Fund may borrow from banks, other affiliated investment companies and other persons, and may engage in reverse repurchase agreements and other transactions which involve borrowings, in amounts up to 33 1/3% of its total assets (including the amount borrowed) or such other percentage permitted by law; (b) the Fund may borrow up to an additional 5% of its total assets for temporary purposes; (c) the Fund may obtain such short-term credits as may be necessary for the clearance of purchases and sales of portfolio securities; and (d) the Fund may purchase securities on margin. If due to market fluctuations or other reasons the Fund's borrowings exceed the limitations stated above, the Trust will promptly reduce the borrowings of the Fund in accordance with the 1940 Act.

Notwithstanding other fundamental investment restrictions (including, without limitation, those restrictions relating to issuer diversification, industry concentration and control), each Fund may purchase securities of other investment companies to the full extent permitted under Section 12 or any other provision of the 1940 Act (or any successor provision thereto) or under any regulation or order of the SEC.

The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund interprets its policy with respect to concentration in a particular industry or group of industries under Fundamental Investment Restriction 7 above, to apply to direct investments in the securities of issuers in a particular industry or group of industries, generally as classified by the Global Industry Classification Standard or other similar classification system in the event that the Global Industry Classification Standard is no longer in use. In addition, for the purpose of its concentration policy: (a) the Fund will consider each industry as classified by the Global Industry Classification Standard as a separate industry; (b) industrial development bonds issued by non-governmental issuers may be considered to be issued by members of an industry (non-governmental issuers are issuers other than the U.S. government (including its agencies and instrumentalities) and state or municipal governments and their political subdivisions); (c) wholly-owned finance companies will be considered to be in the industries of their parents if their activities are primarily related to financing the activities of the parents; and (d) the Fund takes the position that privately issued mortgage-related securities, or any asset-backed securities, do not represent interests in a separate “industry” or group of industries. For purposes of this limitation, securities of the U.S. government (including its agencies and instrumentalities), repurchase agreements collateralized by U.S. government securities, and securities of state or municipal governments and their political subdivisions are not considered to be issued by members of any industry.

For the purpose of industry concentration, in determining industry classification, the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund may use any one or more of the following: the Bloomberg Industry Group Classification, Standard & Poors, J.J. Kenny Municipal Purpose Codes, FT Interactive Industrial Codes, Securities Industry Classification Codes, Global Industry Classification Standard or the Morgan Stanley Capital International industry classification titles or Barclays Capital sector classification scheme. Also for the purpose of industry concentration, industrial development bonds issued by non-governmental issuers may be considered to be issued by members of an industry. Non-governmental issuers are issuers other than the U.S. government (including its agencies and instrumentalities) and state or municipal governments and their political subdivisions.

Any Investment Restriction which involves a maximum percentage (other than the restriction set forth above in Investment Restriction No. 5 of the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund and Non-Fundamental Investment Restriction No. 5 of the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund) will not be considered violated unless an excess over the percentage occurs immediately after, and is caused by, an acquisition or encumbrance of securities or assets of the Fund. The 1940 Act requires that if the asset coverage for borrowings at any time falls below the limits described in Investment Restriction No. 5 of the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund and Non-Fundamental Investment Restriction No. 5 of the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund, a Fund will, within three days thereafter (not including Sundays and holidays), reduce the amount of its borrowings to an extent that the net asset coverage of such borrowings shall conform to such limits.

## **CONTINUOUS OFFERING**

The method by which Creation Unit Aggregations of shares are created and traded may raise certain issues under applicable securities laws. Because new Creation Unit Aggregations of shares are issued and sold by the Funds on an ongoing basis, at any point a “distribution,” as such term is used in the Securities Act, may occur. Broker-dealers and other persons are cautioned that some activities on their part may, depending on the circumstances, result in their being deemed participants in a distribution in a manner which could render them statutory underwriters and subject them to the prospectus delivery requirement and liability provisions of the Securities Act.

For example, a broker-dealer firm or its client may be deemed a statutory underwriter if it takes Creation Unit Aggregations after placing an order with the Distributor, breaks them down into constituent shares, and sells such shares directly to customers, or if it chooses to couple the creation of a supply of new shares with an active selling effort involving solicitation of secondary market demand for shares. A determination of whether one is an underwriter for purposes of the Securities Act must take into account all the facts and circumstances pertaining to the activities of the broker-dealer or its client in the particular case, and the examples mentioned above should not be considered a complete description of all the activities that could lead to a categorization as an underwriter. Broker-dealer firms should also note that dealers who are not “underwriters” but are effecting transactions in shares, whether or not participating in the distribution of shares, generally are required to deliver a prospectus. This is because the prospectus delivery exemption in Section 4(3) of the Securities Act is not available in respect of such transactions as a result of Section 24(d) of the 1940 Act. Firms that incur a prospectus delivery obligation with respect to shares of the Fund

are reminded that, pursuant to Rule 153 under the Securities Act, a prospectus delivery obligation under Section 5(b)(2) of the Securities Act owed to an exchange member in connection with a sale on the Listing Exchange is satisfied by the fact that the prospectus is available at the Listing Exchange upon request. The prospectus delivery mechanism provided in Rule 153 is only available with respect to transactions on an exchange.

## **PORTFOLIO HOLDINGS**

The Board of Trustees of the Trust has adopted a policy on disclosure of portfolio holdings, which it believes is in the best interest of the Funds' shareholders. The policy provides that neither the Funds nor their Investment Adviser, Distributor or any agent, or any employee thereof ("Fund Representative") will disclose a Fund's portfolio holdings information to any person other than in accordance with the policy. For purposes of the policy, "portfolio holdings information" means a Fund's actual portfolio holdings, as well as non-public information about its trading strategies or pending transactions including the portfolio holdings, trading strategies or pending transactions of any commingled fund portfolio, which contains identical holdings as the Fund. Under the policy, neither a Fund nor any Fund Representative may solicit or accept any compensation or other consideration in connection with the disclosure of portfolio holdings information. The Fund Representative may provide portfolio holdings information to third parties if such information has been included in a Fund's public filings with the SEC or is disclosed on a Fund's publicly accessible website. Information posted on a Fund's website may be separately provided to any person commencing the day after it is first published on the Fund's website.

Under the policy, each business day before commencement of trading in shares, the Trust will disclose on its website the identities and quantities of each Fund's portfolio holdings that will form the basis for the Fund's calculation of NAV at the end of the Business Day. In addition, each Fund's portfolio holdings information will be provided to the Distributor or other agent for dissemination through the facilities of the National Securities Clearing Corporation ("NSCC") and/or other fee based subscription services to NSCC members and/or subscribers to those other fee-based subscription services, including Authorized Participants (defined below) and to entities that publish and/or analyze such information in connection with the process of purchasing or redeeming Creation Units or trading shares of Funds in the secondary market. The Distributor may also make available portfolio holdings information to other institutional market participants and entities that provide information services. This information typically reflects a Fund's anticipated holdings on the following business day. The "Authorized Participants" are generally large institutional investors that have been authorized by the Distributor to purchase and redeem large blocks of shares (known as Creation Units) pursuant to legal requirements, including the exemptive order granted by the SEC, to which a Fund offers and redeems shares.

Other than portfolio holdings information made available in connection with the creation/redemption process, as discussed above, portfolio holdings information that is not filed with the SEC or posted on the publicly available website may be provided to third parties only in limited circumstances. Third-party recipients will be required to keep all portfolio holdings information confidential and are prohibited from trading on the information they receive. Disclosure to such third parties must be approved in advance by the Trust's Chief Compliance Officer ("CCO"). Disclosure to providers of auditing, custody, proxy voting and other similar services for a Fund, as well as rating and ranking organizations, will generally be permitted; however, information may be disclosed to other third parties (including, without limitation, individuals, institutional investors, and Authorized Participants that sell shares of a Fund) only upon approval by the CCO, who must first determine that the Fund has a legitimate business purpose for doing so. In general, each recipient of non-public portfolio holdings information must sign a confidentiality and non-trading agreement, although this requirement will not apply when the recipient is otherwise subject to a duty of confidentiality as determined by the CCO. In accordance with the policy, the recipients who receive non-public portfolio holdings information on an ongoing basis are as follows: the Investment Adviser and its affiliates; the Funds' independent registered public accounting firm; the Funds' distributor, administrator and custodian; the Funds' legal counsel, Drinker Biddle & Reath LLP, the non-interested Trustees' counsel, Ropes & Gray LLP, the Funds' financial printer, R.R. Donnelley; and the Funds' proxy voting service (Institutional Shareholder Services, Inc.). These entities are obligated to keep such information confidential. Third-party providers of custodial or accounting services to a Fund may release non-public portfolio holdings information of the Fund only with the permission of Fund Representatives.

Each Fund discloses its portfolio holdings and the percentages they represent of the Fund's net assets each day the Fund is open for business, on the Fund's website. More information about this disclosure is available at [www.flexshares.com](http://www.flexshares.com). A Fund may publish on the website complete portfolio holdings information more frequently if it has a legitimate business purpose for doing so. Portfolio holdings will be disclosed through required filings with the SEC. Each Fund files its portfolio holdings with the SEC for each fiscal quarter on Form N-CSR (with respect to each annual period and semiannual period) and Form N-Q (with

respect to the first and third quarters of the Fund's fiscal year). Shareholders may obtain a Fund's Forms N-CSR and N-Q filings on the SEC's website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov). In addition, the Funds' Forms N-CSR and N-Q filings may be reviewed and copied at the SEC's public reference room in Washington, DC. You may call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330 for information about the SEC's website or the operation of the public reference room.

Under the policy, the Board is to receive information, on a quarterly basis, regarding any other disclosures of non-public portfolio holdings information that were permitted during the preceding quarter.

## MANAGEMENT OF THE TRUST

### TRUSTEES AND OFFICERS

The Board of Trustees of the Trust is responsible for the management and business and affairs of the Trust. Set forth below is information about the Trustees and Officers of the FlexShares Trust as of the date of this SAI. A brief statement of their present positions and principal occupations during the past five years is also provided.

NAME, ADDRESS, <sup>(1)</sup> AGE, POSITIONS HELD WITH TRUST AND LENGTH OF SERVICE AS TRUSTEE <sup>(2)</sup>	PRINCIPAL OCCUPATIONS DURING PAST FIVE YEARS	NUMBER OF FUNDS IN FUND COMPLEX <sup>(3)</sup> OVERSEEN BY TRUSTEE	OTHER DIRECTORSHIPS HELD BY TRUSTEE DURING THE PAST FIVE YEARS <sup>(4)</sup>
<b>NON-INTERESTED TRUSTEES</b>			
Sarah N. Garvey Age: 66 Trustee since July 2011	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Chairman of the Board of Navy Pier from 2011 to 2013 and Member of the Board since 2011;</li> <li>• Member of the Board of Directors of The Civic Federation since 2004;</li> <li>• Member of the Executive Committee and Chairman of the Audit Committee since 2017 and Trustee of the Art Institute of Chicago since 2011.</li> </ul>	25	NONE
Philip G. Hubbard Age: 66 Trustee since July 2011	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Managing Partner of Solidian Fund, LP and Solidian Management, LLC (a fund of hedge funds platform for family and friends investments) since 2001;</li> <li>• President of Hubbard Management Group, LLC (a personal investment vehicle) since 2001;</li> <li>• Chairman of the Board of Trustees of the Wheaton College Trust Company, N.A. since 2004;</li> <li>• Member since 1998 of the Board of Trustees of Wheaton College;</li> <li>• Chairman of the Board of Directors of the English Language Institute/China (a nonprofit educational organization) since 1993;</li> </ul>	25	NONE



NAME, ADDRESS, <sup>(1)</sup> AGE, POSITIONS HELD WITH TRUST AND LENGTH OF SERVICE AS TRUSTEE <sup>(2)</sup>	PRINCIPAL OCCUPATIONS DURING PAST FIVE YEARS	NUMBER OF FUNDS IN FUND COMPLEX <sup>(3)</sup> OVERSEEN BY TRUSTEE	OTHER DIRECTORSHIPS HELD BY TRUSTEE DURING THE PAST FIVE YEARS <sup>(4)</sup>
Eric T. McKissack Age: 64 Trustee and Chairman since July 2011	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Member of the Board of First Cup, LLC (restaurant franchising) since 2014.</li> <li>• Founder and CEO of Channing Capital Management, LLC (an SEC registered investment adviser) since 2004;</li> <li>• Member of the Board of Trustees, the Investment Committee, and the Finance Committee of the Art Institute of Chicago since 2002;</li> <li>• Member of the Board of Grand Victoria Foundation since 2011; Member of the Board of the Graham Foundation since 2014;</li> <li>• Member of the Keystone Board of the Shirley Ryan AbilityLab since 2001.</li> </ul>	25	Consulting Group Capital Markets Funds (10 Portfolios) since April 2013
<b>INTERESTED TRUSTEE</b> Shundrawn A. Thomas <sup>(5)</sup> Age: 44 Trustee since July 2011	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• President, Northern Trust Asset Management since October 2017;</li> <li>• President of the Trust from July 2011 to March 2017;</li> <li>• Executive Vice President, Head of Funds and Managed Accounts, Northern Trust Asset Management from June 2014 to October 2017;</li> <li>• Managing Director and Global Business Head of the Exchange-Traded Funds Group, Northern Trust Asset Management from 2010 to 2014;</li> <li>• Member of the Board of Florida A&amp;M University Foundation since 2014;</li> <li>• Member of the Board of Trustees of Wheaton College since May 2009;</li> </ul>	25	Northern Funds (44 Portfolios) since October 2017 and Northern Institutional Funds (7 Portfolios) since October 2017

NAME, ADDRESS, <sup>(1)</sup> AGE, POSITIONS HELD WITH TRUST AND LENGTH OF SERVICE AS TRUSTEE <sup>(2)</sup>	PRINCIPAL OCCUPATIONS DURING PAST FIVE YEARS	NUMBER OF FUNDS IN FUND COMPLEX <sup>(3)</sup> OVERSEEN BY TRUSTEE	OTHER DIRECTORSHIPS HELD BY TRUSTEE DURING THE PAST FIVE YEARS <sup>(4)</sup>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Member of the Board of Trustees of the Wheaton College Trust Company since 2009;</li> <li>Partner at Tree of Life Resources, LLP (a multi-media company) from 2005 to 2014.</li> </ul>		
<p>(1) Each Non-Interested Trustee may be contacted by writing to the Trustee, c/o Paulita Pike, Ropes &amp; Gray LLP, 191 North Wacker Drive, 32<sup>nd</sup> Floor, Chicago, IL 60606. Mr. Thomas may be contacted by writing to him at 50 S. LaSalle St., Chicago, Illinois 60603.</p> <p>(2) Each Trustee will hold office for an indefinite term until the earliest of: (i) the next meeting of shareholders, if any, called for the purpose of considering the election or re-election of such Trustee and until the election and qualification of his or her successor, if any, elected at such meeting; or (ii) the date a Trustee resigns or retires, or a Trustee is removed by the Board of Trustees or shareholders, in accordance with the Trust's Agreement and Declaration of Trust.</p> <p>(3) The "Fund Complex" consists of the Trust.</p> <p>(4) This column includes only directorships of companies required to report to the SEC under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (i.e., public companies) or other investment companies registered under the 1940 Act.</p> <p>(5) An "interested person," as defined by the 1940 Act. Mr. Thomas is deemed to be an "interested" Trustee because he is an officer of NTI and its parent company.</p>			

## OFFICERS OF THE TRUST

NAME, ADDRESS, AGE,  
POSITIONS HELD WITH  
TRUST AND LENGTH OF  
SERVICE<sup>(1)</sup>

PRINCIPAL OCCUPATIONS DURING PAST FIVE YEARS

Peter K. Ewing  
Age: 59  
50 South LaSalle Street  
Chicago, IL 60603  
President since March 2017

Vice President of the Trust from July 2011 to March 2017; Director of ETF Product Management, Northern Trust Investments, Inc. and Senior Vice President, The Northern Trust Company, since September 2010.

Craig R. Carberry, Esq.  
Age: 57  
50 South LaSalle Street  
Chicago, IL 60603  
Secretary since July 2011

Associate General Counsel and Senior Vice President at The Northern Trust Company since June 2015; Chief Compliance Officer of Northern Trust Investments, Inc. from October 2015 to June 2017 and Secretary since 2000; Assistant General Counsel and U.S. Funds General Counsel at The Northern Trust Company from July 2014 to June 2015; Senior Legal Counsel and U.S. Funds General Counsel at The Northern Trust Company from 2000-2014; Secretary of 50 South Capital Advisors, LLC since 2015; Secretary of Alpha Core Strategies Fund (formerly NT Alpha Strategies Fund) since 2004; Secretary of Equity Long/Short Opportunities Fund (formerly NT Equity Long/Short Strategies Fund) since 2011; Secretary of Northern Institutional Funds and Northern Funds since 2010; Secretary of The Northern Trust Company of Connecticut from 2009 to 2013.

Benjamin D. Wiesenfeld  
Age: 39  
50 South LaSalle Street  
Chicago, IL 60603  
Chief Compliance Officer since July 2016

Chief Compliance Officer of Northern Funds and Northern Institutional Funds since June 2016; Chief Compliance Officer of the Scout Funds from 2009 to 2016.

**NAME, ADDRESS, AGE,  
POSITIONS HELD WITH  
TRUST AND LENGTH OF  
SERVICE<sup>(1)</sup>**

**PRINCIPAL OCCUPATIONS DURING PAST FIVE YEARS**

Randal E. Rein  
Age: 47  
50 South LaSalle Street  
Chicago, IL 60603  
Treasurer and Principal Financial Officer since  
July 2011

Senior Vice President of Northern Trust Investments, Inc. since 2010; Treasurer of Northern Funds, Northern Institutional Funds and Alpha Core Strategies Fund since 2008; Treasurer of Equity Long/Short Opportunities Fund since 2011.

Ann Marie Halter  
Age: 43  
50 South LaSalle Street  
Chicago, IL 60603  
Vice President since March 2017

Senior ETF Product Manager, Northern Trust Investments, Inc. since 2011 and Senior Vice President, The Northern Trust Company, since February 2010.

Marie E. Dzanis  
Age: 50  
50 South LaSalle Street  
Chicago, IL 60603  
Vice President since July 2011

Head of Distribution for Funds and Managed Accounts, Northern Trust Investments, Inc. since 2014; Director of ETF Sales and Servicing, Northern Trust Investments, Inc. from 2011 to 2014.

Peter J. Flood  
Age: 60  
50 South LaSalle Street  
Chicago, IL 60603  
Vice President since July 2011

Director of ETF Investment Strategy, Northern Trust Investments, Inc. since 2010; Portfolio Manager, Northern Trust Investments, Inc. from 2007 to 2014.

Darlene Chappell  
Age: 55  
50 South LaSalle Street  
Chicago, IL 60603  
Anti-Money Laundering Officer  
since July 2011

Anti-Money Laundering Compliance Officer for Northern Trust Investments, Inc., Northern Trust Securities, Inc., Northern Funds, Northern Institutional Funds and Alpha Core Strategies Fund (formerly NT Alpha Strategies Fund) since 2009, Equity Long/Short Opportunities Fund (formerly NT Equity Long/Short Strategies Fund) since 2011 and 50 South Capital Advisors, LLC since 2015; Vice President and Compliance Consultant for The Northern Trust Company since 2006; Anti-Money Laundering Compliance Officer for Northern Trust Company of Connecticut from 2009 to 2013.

Jose J. Del Real  
Age: 40  
50 South LaSalle Street  
Chicago, IL 60603  
Assistant Secretary since June 2015

Senior Legal Counsel and Senior Vice President, Asset Management Practice Group of the Legal Department of The Northern Trust Company since March 2017; Senior Legal Counsel and Vice President, Asset Management Practice Group of the Legal Department of The Northern Trust Company from August 2015 to March 2017; Assistant Secretary of Northern Trust Investments, Inc. since 2016; Legal Counsel and Vice President, Asset Management Practice Group of the Legal Department of The Northern Trust Company from 2014 until 2015; Assistant Secretary of Northern Funds and Northern Institutional Funds from 2011 to 2014, and since May 2015; Vice President and Regulatory Administration Senior Attorney of The Northern Trust Company from 2012 until 2014.

Susan W. Yee  
Age: 48  
70 Fargo Street  
Boston, MA 02110  
Assistant Secretary since October 2014

Vice President, Regulatory Services Group, JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A. since 1994, in various positions.

(1) Officers hold office at the pleasure of the Board of Trustees until their successors are duly elected and qualified, or until they die, resign, are removed or become disqualified.

Certain officers hold comparable positions with certain other investment companies of which NTI, JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A. or an affiliate thereof is the investment adviser, administrator, custodian or transfer agent.

## BOARD COMMITTEES

The Board has established a standing Audit Committee and a Governance Committee in connection with its governance of the Trust.

The Audit Committee consists of Mr. Hubbard (chair), Mr. McKissack and Ms. Garvey. The Board has determined that each member of the Audit Committee is not an “interested person” as defined in the 1940 Act (an “Independent Trustee”). The responsibilities of the Audit Committee are to assist the Board in overseeing the Trust’s independent registered public accounting firm, accounting policies and procedures and other areas relating to the Trust’s auditing processes. The Audit Committee is responsible for selecting and recommending to the full Board an independent registered public accounting firm to audit the books and records of the Trust for the ensuing year, and reviews with the firm the scope and results of each audit. The Audit Committee also is responsible for pre-approving all audit services and any permitted non-audit services to be provided by the independent registered public accounting firm directly to the Trust. The Audit Committee also is responsible for pre-approving permitted non-audit services to be provided by the independent registered public accounting firm to: (1) the Investment Adviser; and (2) any entity in a control relationship with the Investment Adviser that provides ongoing services to the Trust, provided that the engagement of the independent registered public accounting firm relates directly to the operation and financial reporting of the Trust. The scope of the Audit Committee’s responsibilities is oversight. It is management’s responsibility to maintain appropriate systems for accounting and internal control and the independent registered public accounting firm’s responsibility to plan and carry out an audit in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board. The Audit Committee met two times during the last fiscal year ended October 31, 2017.

The Governance Committee consists of Ms. Garvey (chair), Mr. Hubbard and Mr. McKissack. The Board has determined that each member of the Governance Committee is an Independent Trustee. The functions performed by the Governance Committee include, among other things, selecting and nominating candidates to serve as Independent Trustees, reviewing and making recommendations regarding Trustee compensation and developing policies regarding Trustee education. In filling Board vacancies, the Governance Committee will consider nominees recommended by shareholders. Nominee recommendations (accompanied by resumes) should be submitted to the Trust at its mailing address stated in the Fund’s Prospectus and should be directed to the attention of the FlexShares Trust Governance Committee, care of the Secretary of the Trust. The Governance Committee has not established specific qualifications that it believes must be met by a nominee. In evaluating nominees, the Governance Committee considers, among other things, candidates’ qualifications for Board membership and their independence from management and principal service providers. Persons selected must be independent in terms of both the letter and the spirit of the Investment Company Act of 1940 and the Rules and Regulations under the Act. The Committee will consider the effect of any relationships beyond those delineated in the 1940 Act that might impair independence, such as business, financial or family relationships with managers or service providers of the Trust. The Committee also considers whether the individual’s background, skills, and experience will complement the background, skills, and experience of other Trustees and will contribute to the Board’s diversity. The Governance Committee met two times during the last fiscal year ended October 31, 2017.

## LEADERSHIP STRUCTURE AND QUALIFICATIONS OF THE BOARD OF TRUSTEES

The Board is responsible for oversight of the Trust. The Trust has engaged the Investment Adviser to manage the Funds of the Trust on a day-to-day basis. The Board oversees the Investment Adviser and certain other principal service providers in the operations of the Funds. The Board currently is composed of four Trustees, three of whom are Independent Trustees. The Board believes that having Mr. Thomas serve as an interested Trustee brings management insight that is important to certain of the Board's decisions and also in the best interest of shareholders. The Board meets in-person at regularly scheduled meetings currently anticipated to occur four times in a year. In addition, the Board members may meet in-person or by telephone at special meetings or on an informal basis at other times. The Independent Trustees also expect to meet separately in executive session, including with independent trustee counsel. The Trustees believe that these meetings will help mitigate conflicts of interest. The Trustees also believe that the executive sessions will allow the Independent Trustees to deliberate candidly and constructively, separately from management, in a manner that affords honest disagreement and critical questioning.

As stated above, the Board has established a standing Audit Committee and a Governance Committee to assist the Board in fulfilling its oversight responsibilities. The Board also may establish ad hoc committees or working groups from time to time to aid in its oversight. The Independent Trustees have engaged independent legal counsel to assist them in fulfilling their responsibilities.

The Board is chaired by Eric McKissack, an Independent Trustee. As Chair, this Independent Trustee leads the Board in its activities. Also, the Chair acts as a member of the Audit and Governance Committees (and may serve as a member of each subsequently established standing or ad hoc committee). The Trustees have determined that the Board's leadership and committee structure is appropriate because the Board believes that it sets the proper tone to the relationships between the Trust, on the one hand, and the Investment Adviser and certain other principal service providers, on the other, and facilitates the exercise of the Board's independent judgment in evaluating and managing the relationships.

The Board has concluded that, based on each Board member's experience, qualifications, attributes or skills on an individual basis and in combination with those of the other Board members, each Board member should serve as a Board member. Among other attributes common to all Board members are their ability to review critically, evaluate, question and discuss information provided to them, to interact effectively with the various service providers to the Trust, and to exercise reasonable business judgment in the performance of their duties as Board members. In addition, the Board will take into account the actual service and commitment of the Board members during their tenure in determining whether each should continue to serve. A Board member's ability to perform his or her duties effectively may have been attained through a Board member's educational background or professional training; business, consulting, public service or academic positions; experience from service as a Board member of other funds, public companies, or non-profit entities or other organizations; or other experiences. Set forth below is a brief discussion of the specific experience, qualifications, attributes or skills of each Trustee that led the Board to conclude that he or she should serve as a Board member.

### **Non-Interested Trustees:**

*Ms. Garvey.* Ms. Garvey is a former partner of Deloitte & Touche LLP and has more than 20 years experience in tax accounting. She previously served as Vice President of Corporate Relations and Vice President of State and Local Government Relations for Boeing Co. She serves on the Executive Committee and is Chairman of the Audit Committee of the Art Institute of Chicago. She previously served as Chairman of the Board of Chicago's Navy Pier and of Chicago's Shedd Aquarium. She is a Certified Public Accountant and holds bachelors and masters degrees in accounting.

*Mr. Hubbard.* Mr. Hubbard has served for 17 years as president of the Hubbard Management Group, LLC, and as managing partner for Solidian Fund, L.P. and Solidian Management, LLC. He previously served for 13 years on the Board of Harris Bank Winnetka and is a Certified Public Accountant. In addition, Mr. Hubbard serves on the Board of Trustees of Wheaton College, is the chairman of the Wheaton College Trust Company and of the English Language Institute/China. He holds a bachelors degree in economics and a masters degree in business administration.

*Mr. McKissack.* Mr. McKissack is the Chief Executive Officer and Founder of Channing Capital Management, LLC, a registered investment adviser. He also serves as an independent trustee on the Board of Trustees of a group of mutual funds, the Consulting Group Capital Markets Funds. Mr. McKissack also serves on the Board of the Art Institute of Chicago, the Board of the Grand Victoria Foundation, the Board of the Graham Foundation, and on the Keystone Board of the Shirley Ryan AbilityLab. He also served on the Board of the ICMA Retirement Corporation, a non-profit provider of retirement administration services. He is a Chartered Financial Analyst.

## Interested Trustee:

*Mr. Thomas.* Mr. Thomas is President of Northern Trust Asset Management. Previously, he was President of the Trust and Executive Vice President and Head of Funds and Managed Accounts of Northern Trust Asset Management. Prior to that, he was the Managing Director and Global Business Head of the Exchange-Traded Funds Group of Northern Trust Global Investments. He was also President and Chief Executive Officer of Northern Trust Securities, Inc. He also served as Senior Vice President, Head of Corporate Strategy for Northern Trust Corporation. Mr. Thomas also serves as a Trustee on the Boards of the Northern Funds and Northern Institutional Funds, mutual funds that are managed by the Investment Adviser. He also is on the boards of several non-profit corporations and colleges. He holds a bachelors degree in accounting and a masters of business administration.

## RISK OVERSIGHT

Investing in general and the operation of exchange-traded funds involve a variety of risks, such as investment risk, compliance risk, and operational risk, among others. The Board oversees risk as part of its oversight of the Trust. Risk oversight is addressed as part of various regular Board and Audit Committee activities. The Board reviews reports from, among others, the Investment Adviser, the Trust's Chief Compliance Officer, the Trust's independent registered public accounting firm and counsel, as appropriate, regarding risks faced by the Trust and the risk management programs of the Investment Adviser and certain service providers. The actual day-to-day risk management with respect to the Trust resides with the Investment Adviser and other service providers to the Trust. The Investment Adviser has a dedicated risk management function that is headed by a chief risk officer. Although the risk management policies of the Investment Adviser and the service providers are designed to be effective, those policies and their implementation vary among service providers and over time, and there is no guarantee that they will be effective. Not all risks that may affect the Trust can be identified or processes and controls developed to eliminate or mitigate their occurrence or effects, and some risks are simply beyond any control of the Trust or the Investment Adviser, its affiliates or other service providers.

## TRUSTEE OWNERSHIP OF FUND SHARES

The following table shows the dollar range of shares of the Funds owned by each Trustee.

### Information as of December 31, 2017

Name of Non-Interested Trustee	Fund	Dollar Range of Equity Securities in the Fund	Aggregate Dollar Range of Equity Securities in All Registered Investment Companies Overseen by Trustee in Family of Investment Companies <sup>1</sup>
Sarah N. Garvey	None	None	Over \$100,000
Philip G. Hubbard	None	None	None
Eric T. McKissack	None	None	\$10,001-\$50,000

### Information as of December 31, 2017

Name of Interested Trustee	Fund	Dollar Range of Equity Securities in the Fund	Aggregate Dollar Range of Equity Securities in All Registered Investment Companies Overseen by Trustee in Family of Investment Companies <sup>1</sup>
Shundrawn A. Thomas	FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund	\$10,001-\$50,000	Over \$100,000

<sup>1</sup> The Family of Investment Companies consists only of the Funds of FlexShares Trust. Messrs. Hubbard and McKissack each have an economic interest in the Trust valued at over \$100,000 by virtue of their participation in the Trust's deferred compensation plan (the "DC Plan") for its non-interested Trustees. Under the DC Plan, a non-interested Trustee may elect to have his or her deferred compensation treated as if it had been invested by the Trust in shares of the FlexShares Morningstar US Market Factor Tilt Index Fund, FlexShares Morningstar Emerging Markets Factor Tilt Index Fund, FlexShares Global Quality Real Estate Index Fund, FlexShares Quality Dividend Index Fund, FlexShares iBoxx 5-Year Target Duration TIPS Index Fund, FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund and/or the FlexShares Morningstar Global Upstream Natural Resources

Index Fund. The amount paid to the Trustees under the DC Plan will be determined based upon the performance of these investments.

## TRUSTEE AND OFFICER COMPENSATION

The Trust pays each Trustee who is not an officer, director or employee of Northern Trust Corporation or its subsidiaries annual fees for his or her services as a Trustee of the Trust and as a member of Board committees. In recognition of their services, the fees paid to the Board and Committee chairpersons may be larger than the fees paid to other members of the Trust's Board and Committees. The Trustees also are reimbursed for travel expenses incurred in connection with attending such meetings. The Trust also may pay the incidental costs of a Trustee to attend training or other types of conferences relating to the investment company industry. The Trust does not provide pension or retirement benefits to its Trustees. Each non-interested Trustee is entitled to participate in the Trust's DC Plan. Under the DC Plan, a non-interested Trustee may elect to defer all or a portion of his or her compensation and have the deferred compensation treated as if it had been invested by the Trust in shares of the FlexShares Morningstar US Market Factor Tilt Index Fund, FlexShares Emerging Markets Factor Tilt Index Fund, FlexShares Global Quality Real Estate Index Fund, FlexShares Quality Dividend Index Fund, FlexShares iBoxx 5-Year Target Duration TIPS Index Fund, FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund and/or the FlexShares Morningstar Global Upstream Natural Resources Index Fund. The amount paid to the Trustees under the DC Plan will be determined based upon the performance of such investments.

The following table sets forth important information with respect to the compensation of each non-interested and interested Trustee of the Trust:

Name of Trustee	Aggregate Compensation from Trust <sup>(1)</sup>	FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund	FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund
<b>Non-Interested Trustees:</b>			
Sarah N. Garvey	\$132,500	\$1,969	\$ 404
Philip G. Hubbard	\$132,500	\$1,969	\$ 404
Eric T. McKissack	\$132,500	\$1,969	\$ 404
<b>Interested Trustee:</b>			
Shundrawn A. Thomas	None	None	None

<sup>1</sup>The amounts represent the compensation received by the Trustees for the fiscal year ended October 31, 2017. Effective January 1, 2018, the non-interested Trustees receive an annual retainer of \$130,000, and the chairs of the Board and each Committee receive an additional annual retainer of \$25,000. Ms. Garvey did not defer any compensation during the fiscal year ended October 31, 2017. Mr. Hubbard elected to defer \$66,250 of \$132,500 in total compensation during the fiscal year ended October 31, 2017. Mr. McKissack elected to defer \$66,250 of \$132,500 in total compensation during the fiscal year ended October 31, 2017.

The Trust's officers do not receive fees from the Trust for services in such capacities. NTI receives fees from the Trust as Investment Adviser. Messrs. Carberry, Del Real, Ewing, Flood, Rein, and Wiesenfeld and Meses. Chappell, Dzanis and Halter are officers of NTI and/or its affiliates.

## CONTROL PERSONS AND PRINCIPAL HOLDERS OF SECURITIES

The Trustees and officers of the Trust collectively owned less than 1% of each Fund's outstanding shares as of February 1, 2018.

Although the Trust does not have information concerning the beneficial ownership of shares nominally held by Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), as of February 1, 2018, the name and percentage ownership of each DTC participant that owned of record 5% or more of the outstanding shares of each Fund were as follows:

### FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund:

Nominee Name/Address	Percentage Ownership
Charles Schwab & Co., Inc. P.O. Box 64930 Phoenix, AZ 85082-4930	9.60%
Northern Trust Company 801 S. Canal Street Chicago, IL 60607	67.29%

## FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund:

<u>Nominee Name/Address</u>	<u>Percentage Ownership</u>
National Financial Services LLC P.O. Box 673004 Dallas, TX 75267-3004	7.72%
The Park National Bank 50 N. Third Street Newark, OH 43058-3500	12.41%
Enterprise Bank & Trust Company 222 Merrimack Street Lowell, MA 01852	26.50%
Northern Trust Company 801 S. Canal Street Chicago, IL 60607	43.31%

## CODE OF ETHICS

The Trust and the Adviser have each adopted a code of ethics under Rule 17j 1 of the 1940 Act. These codes of ethics permit, subject to certain conditions, personnel of each of those entities to invest in securities that may be purchased or held by the Fund. The Distributor relies on the principal underwriters exception under Rule 17j-1(c)(3), specifically where the Distributor is not affiliated with the Trust or the Adviser, and no officer, director or general partner of the Distributor serves as an officer, director or general partner of the Trust or the Adviser.

## INVESTMENT ADVISER

NTI, a subsidiary of The Northern Trust Company (“TNTC”) and an indirect subsidiary of Northern Trust Corporation, serves as the Investment Adviser of the Fund. Northern Trust Corporation is regulated by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System as a financial holding company under the U.S. Bank Holding Company Act of 1956, as amended. NTI is located at 50 South LaSalle Street, Chicago, Illinois 60603.

NTI is an Illinois State Banking Corporation and an investment adviser registered under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, as amended. It primarily manages assets for institutional and individual separately managed accounts, investment companies and bank common and collective funds.

TNTC is the principal subsidiary of Northern Trust Corporation. TNTC is located at 50 South LaSalle Street, Chicago, Illinois 60603.

TNTC is a member of the Federal Reserve System. Since 1889, TNTC has administered and managed assets for individuals, institutions and corporations. Unless otherwise indicated, NTI and TNTC are referred to collectively in this SAI as “Northern Trust.”

As of December 31, 2017, Northern Trust Corporation, through its affiliates, had assets under investment management of \$1.2 trillion and assets under custody of \$10.7 trillion.

### Investment Advisory and Ancillary Services Agreement

Under the Trust’s Investment Advisory and Ancillary Services Agreement with the Investment Adviser for the Funds (the “Advisory Agreement”), the Investment Adviser, subject to the general supervision of the Trust’s Board of Trustees, makes decisions with respect to, and places orders for, all purchases and sales of portfolio securities for each Fund and also provides certain ancillary services.

The Investment Adviser also is responsible for monitoring and preserving the records required to be maintained under the regulations of the SEC (with certain exceptions unrelated to its activities for the FlexShares Trust). In making investment recommendations for the Funds, if any, investment advisory personnel may not inquire or take into consideration whether issuers of securities proposed for purchase or sale for the Funds’ accounts are customers of TNTC’s commercial banking department. These requirements are designed to prevent investment advisory personnel for the Funds from knowing which companies have commercial business with TNTC and from purchasing securities where they know the proceeds will be used to repay loans to the bank.

The Advisory Agreement has been approved by the Board of Trustees, including the “non-interested” Trustees and the initial shareholder of each Fund prior to the initial offering of shares of the Fund.



The Advisory Agreement provides that generally in selecting brokers or dealers to place orders for transactions on: (i) common and preferred stocks, the Investment Adviser shall use its best judgment to obtain the best overall terms available; and (ii) on bonds and other fixed-income obligations, the Investment Adviser shall attempt to obtain best net price and execution or, use its best judgment to obtain the best overall terms available.

Transactions on U.S. stock exchanges, and increasingly equity securities traded over-the-counter, involve the payment of negotiated brokerage commissions. Over-the-counter transactions in equity securities also may involve the payment of negotiated commissions to brokers. Transactions on foreign stock exchanges involve payment for brokerage commissions, which generally are fixed by applicable regulatory bodies. Many over-the-counter issues, including corporate debt and government securities, are normally traded on a “net” basis (i.e., without commission) through dealers, or otherwise involve transactions directly with the issuer of an instrument. With respect to over-the-counter transactions, the Investment Adviser will often deal directly with dealers who make a market in the instruments involved except in those circumstances where more favorable prices and execution are available elsewhere. The cost of foreign and domestic securities purchased from underwriters includes an underwriting commission or concession, and the prices at which securities are purchased from and sold to dealers include a dealer’s mark-up or mark-down. On exchanges on which commissions are negotiated, the cost of transactions may vary among different brokers. In assessing the best overall terms available for any transaction, the Investment Adviser is to consider all factors it deems relevant, including the breadth of the market in the security, the price of the security, the financial condition and execution capability of the broker or dealer, and the reasonableness of the commission, if any, both for the specific transaction and on a continuing basis. In evaluating the best overall terms available and in selecting the broker or dealer to execute a particular transaction, the Investment Adviser may consider the brokerage and research services provided to the Funds and/or other accounts over which the Investment Adviser or an affiliate exercises investment discretion. A broker or dealer providing brokerage and/or research services may receive a higher commission than another broker or dealer would receive for the same transaction. These brokerage and research services may include but are not limited to, furnishing of advice, either directly or through publications or writings, as to the value of securities, the advisability of investing in securities and the availability of securities or purchasers or sellers of securities. The Investment Adviser also may obtain economic statistics, forecasting services, industry and company analyses, portfolio strategies, quantitative data, quotation services, order management systems for certain purposes, certain news services, credit rating services, testing services, execution services, market information systems, consulting services from economists and political analysts and computer software or on-line data feeds. These services and products may disproportionately benefit other accounts. For example, research or other services paid for through the Funds’ commissions may not be used in managing the Funds. In addition, other accounts may receive the benefit, including disproportionate benefits, of economies of scale or price discounts in connection with products or services that may be provided to the Funds and to such other accounts. To the extent that the Investment Adviser uses soft dollars, it will not have to pay for those products or services itself. The Investment Adviser may receive research that is bundled with the trade execution, clearing, and/or settlement services provided by a particular broker-dealer. In that event, the research will effectively be paid for by client commissions that will also be used to pay for execution, clearing and settlement services provided by the broker-dealer and will not be paid by the Investment Adviser.

The Investment Adviser and its affiliates also receive products and services that provide both research and non-research benefits to them (“mixed-use items”). The research portion of mixed-use items may be paid for with soft dollars. When paying for the research portion of mixed-use items with soft dollars, the Investment Adviser must make a good faith allocation between the cost of the research portion and the cost of the non-research portion of the mixed-use items. The Investment Adviser will pay for the non-research portion of the mixed-use items with hard dollars.

Supplemental research information so received is in addition to, and not in lieu of, services required to be performed by the Investment Adviser and does not reduce the advisory fees payable to the Investment Adviser by the Funds. The Trustees will periodically review the commissions paid by the Funds to consider whether the commissions paid over representative periods of time appear to be reasonable in relation to the benefits inuring to the Funds. It is possible that certain of the supplemental research or other services received will primarily benefit one or more other investment companies or other accounts. Conversely, a Fund may be the primary beneficiary of the research or services received as a result of portfolio transactions effected for such other account or investment company.

Each Fund may participate, if and when practicable, in bidding for the purchase of portfolio securities directly from an issuer in order to take advantage of the lower purchase price available to members of a bidding group. The Funds will engage in this practice, however, only when the Investment Adviser believes such practice to be in the Funds’ interests.

On occasions when the Investment Adviser deems the purchase or sale of a security to be in the best interests of a Fund as well as other fiduciary or agency accounts (“other accounts”) managed by the Investment Adviser, the Advisory Agreement provides that the Investment Adviser, to the extent permitted by applicable laws and regulations, may aggregate the securities to be sold or purchased for the Funds with those to be sold or purchased for such other accounts in order to obtain the best net price and execution. In such an event, allocation of the securities so purchased or sold, as well as the expenses incurred in the transaction, will be made by the Investment Adviser in the manner it considers to be the most equitable and consistent with its fiduciary obligations to the Fund and its other accounts involved. In some instances, this procedure may adversely affect the size

of the position obtainable for a Fund or the amount of the securities that are able to be sold for a Fund. To the extent that the execution and price available from more than one broker or dealer are believed to be comparable, the Advisory Agreement permits the Investment Adviser, at its discretion but subject to applicable law, to select the executing broker or dealer on the basis of the Investment Adviser’s opinion of the reliability and quality of the broker or dealer.

The Advisory Agreement provides that the Investment Adviser may render similar services to others so long as its services under the Advisory Agreement are not impaired thereby. The Advisory Agreement also provides that the Trust will indemnify the Investment Adviser against certain liabilities (including liabilities under the federal securities laws relating to untrue statements or omissions of material fact and actions that are in accordance with the terms of the Advisory Agreement) or, in lieu thereof, contribute to resulting losses.

Pursuant to the Advisory Agreement, the Investment Adviser is responsible for most of the operating expenses of each Fund, except: (i) its advisory fees payable under the Advisory Agreement; (ii) distribution fees and expenses paid by the Trust under any distribution plan adopted pursuant to Rule 12b-1 under the 1940 Act; (iii) interest expenses; (iv) brokerage expenses and other expenses (such as stamp taxes) in connection with the execution of portfolio transactions or in connection with creation and redemption transactions; (v) compensation and expenses of the non-interested trustees; (vi) compensation and expenses of counsel to the non-interested trustees; (vii) tax expenses; and (viii) extraordinary expenses, as determined under generally accepted accounting principles. For its services to each Fund, the Investment Adviser is entitled to an advisory fee, computed daily and payable monthly, at annual rates set forth in the table below (expressed as a percentage of each Fund’s average daily net assets).

FlexShares® Ready Access Variable Income Fund	0.25%
FlexShares® Core Select Bond Fund	0.35%

Unless sooner terminated, the Trust’s Advisory Agreement will continue in effect with respect to a particular Fund until June 30, 2018, and thereafter for successive 12-month periods, provided that the continuance is approved at least annually: (i) by the vote of a majority of the Trustees who are not parties to the agreement or “interested persons” (as such term is defined in the 1940 Act) of any party thereto, cast in person at a meeting called for the purpose of voting on such approval; and (ii) by the Trustees or by the vote of a majority of the outstanding shares of each Fund (as defined under “Description of Shares”). The Advisory Agreement is terminable at any time without penalty by the Trust (by specified Trustee or shareholder action) or by the Investment Adviser on 60 days’ written notice.

NTI has contractually agreed to reimburse each Fund its proportionate share of the fees and expenses of the Trust’s non-interested trustees and the legal counsel to the non-interested trustees allocated to such Fund until March 1, 2019. NTI has also contractually agreed to waive management fees or reimburse certain expenses in an amount equal to the sum of (a) any acquired fund fees and expenses, if any, incurred by the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund that are attributable to the Fund’s investment in Acquired Funds managed by NTI or an investment adviser controlling, controlled by, or under common control with NTI (“Affiliated Funds”); and (b) 0.05% or such lesser amount in acquired fund fees and expenses incurred by the Fund that are attributable to the Fund’s investment in acquired funds that are not Affiliated Funds, until March 1, 2019. NTI and a Fund may mutually agree to extend the contractual arrangements. The Trust’s Board of Trustees may terminate the contractual arrangements at any time if it determines that it is in the best interest of a Fund and its shareholders.

The table below provides the aggregate advisory fees paid to the Investment Adviser by each Fund in existence during the fiscal years noted:

Name of Fund	Advisory Fees Paid During the Period or Fiscal Year Ended October 31, 2017	Advisory Fees Paid During the Fiscal Year Ended October 31, 2016	Advisory Fees Paid During the Fiscal Year Ended October 31, 2015
FlexShares® Ready Access Variable Income Fund	\$388,998	\$245,536	\$238,470
FlexShares® Core Select Bond Fund <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 9,536	-	-

<sup>(1)</sup> The FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund commenced operations on November 18, 2016. For the fiscal year ended October 31, 2017, the Investment Adviser reimbursed \$5,223 of the advisory fees paid by the Fund.

The table below provides the reimbursements made by the Investment Adviser to each Fund in existence during the fiscal years noted:

<u>Name of Fund</u>	<u>Expense Reimbursements by NTI During the Period or Fiscal Year Ended October 31, 2017</u>	<u>Expense Reimbursements by NTI During the Fiscal Year Ended October 31, 2016</u>	<u>Expense Reimbursements by NTI During the Fiscal Year Ended October 31, 2015</u>
FlexShares® Ready Access Variable Income Fund	\$10,393	\$9,576	\$8,935
FlexShares® Core Select Bond Fund <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 7,354	-	-

<sup>(1)</sup> The FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund commenced operations on November 18, 2016. For the fiscal year ended October 31, 2017, the Investment Adviser reimbursed \$5,223 of the advisory fees paid by the Fund.

Under the Advisory Agreement with FlexShares Trust, Northern Trust Corporation agrees that the name “FlexShares” may be used in connection with the Trust’s business on a royalty-free basis. Northern Trust Corporation has reserved to itself the right to grant the non-exclusive right to use the name “FlexShares” to any other person. The Advisory Agreement provides that at such time as the Agreement is no longer in effect, the Trust will cease using the name “FlexShares.”

The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund did not pay any brokerage commissions during the fiscal years ended October 31, 2015, October 31, 2016 and October 31, 2017. From its commencement of operations on November 18, 2016 through October 31, 2017, the FlexShares® Core Select Bond Fund paid aggregate brokerage commissions of \$1,350 on transactions amounting to \$9,186,514.

The value of the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund’s aggregate holdings of the securities of its regular brokers or dealers (as defined in Rule 10b-1 under the Investment Company Act) as of October 31, 2017 if any portion of such holdings were purchased during the fiscal year ended October 31, 2017 are as follows:

<u>Regular Broker-Dealer</u>	<u>Debt (D)/Equity (E)</u>	<u>Aggregate Holdings (000’s)</u>
Citigroup, Inc.	D	\$5,703
Credit Suisse Group	D	\$1,226
Goldman Sachs & Co.	D	\$1,599
HSBC Holdings PLC	D	\$1,000
JPMorgan Chase & Co.	D	\$3,937
Morgan Stanley & Co., Inc.	D	\$1,290
UBS AG	D	\$1,683

The FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund did not hold securities of its regular brokers or dealers (as defined in Rule 10b-1 under the Investment Company Act) during the fiscal year ended October 31, 2017.

There were no brokerage commissions paid to any affiliated broker or dealer of NTI during the fiscal year ended October 31, 2017.

## PORTFOLIO MANAGERS

### NAME OF FUND

FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund  
FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund

### PORTFOLIO MANAGERS

Peter Yi and Bilal Memon  
Bradley Camden, Brandon P. Ferguson and Daniel J. Personette

## Accounts Managed by Portfolio Managers

The table below discloses accounts within each type of category listed below for which **Peter Yi** was jointly and primarily responsible for day-to-day portfolio management as of October 31, 2017.

Type of Accounts	Total # of Accounts Managed	Total Assets	# of Accounts Managed that Advisory Fee is Based on Performance	Total Assets that Advisory Fee is Based on Performance
FlexShares Trust:	1	\$ 162,557,133.48	0	\$0
Other Registered Investment Companies:	7	\$62,000,000,000.00	0	\$0
Other Pooled Investment Vehicles:	0	\$ 0	0	\$0
Other Accounts:	0	\$ 0	0	\$0

The table below discloses accounts within each type of category listed below for which **Bilal Memon** was jointly and primarily responsible for day-to-day portfolio management as of October 31, 2017.

Type of Accounts	Total # of Accounts Managed	Total Assets	# of Accounts Managed that Advisory Fee is Based on Performance	Total Assets that Advisory Fee is Based on Performance
FlexShares Trust:	1	\$ 162,557,133.48	0	\$0
Other Registered Investment Companies:	0	\$ 0	0	\$0
Other Pooled Investment Vehicles:	0	\$ 0	0	\$0
Other Accounts:	11	\$2,466,343,000.00	0	\$0

The table below discloses accounts within each type of category listed below for which **Bradley Camden** was jointly and primarily responsible for day-to-day portfolio management as of October 31, 2017.

Type of Accounts	Total # of Accounts Managed	Total Assets	# of Accounts Managed that Advisory Fee is Based on Performance	Total Assets that Advisory Fee is Based on Performance
FlexShares Trust:	4	\$ 111,795,781.85	0	\$0
Other Registered Investment Companies:	4	\$6,251,076,000.00	0	\$0
Other Pooled Investment Vehicles:	0	-	0	\$0
Other Accounts:	67	\$2,966,303,000.00	0	\$0

The table below discloses accounts within each type of category listed below for which **Brandon P. Ferguson** was jointly and primarily responsible for day-to-day portfolio management as of October 31, 2017.

Type of Accounts	Total # of Accounts Managed	Total Assets	# of Accounts Managed that Advisory Fee is Based on Performance	Total Assets that Advisory Fee is Based on Performance
FlexShares Trust:	5	\$3,006,336,545.44	0	\$0
Other Registered Investment Companies:	2	\$2,698,291,342.00	0	\$0
Other Pooled Investment Vehicles:	3	\$3,109,725,897.00	0	\$0
Other Accounts:	6	\$2,970,134,336.00	0	\$0

The table below discloses accounts within each type of category listed below for which **Daniel J. Personette** was jointly and primarily responsible for day-to-day portfolio management as of October 31, 2017.

Type of Accounts	Total # of Accounts Managed	Total Assets	# of Accounts Managed that Advisory Fee is Based on Performance	Total Assets that Advisory Fee is Based on Performance
FlexShares Trust:	3	\$2,936,486,139.23	0	\$0
Other Registered Investment Companies:	2	\$1,420,611,888.87	0	\$0
Other Pooled Investment Vehicles:	4	\$5,891,963,710.70	0	\$0
Other Accounts:	6	\$2,073,856,884.49	0	\$0

## **Material Conflicts of Interest**

The Investment Adviser's portfolio managers are often responsible for managing one or more FlexShares Funds, as well as other accounts, including mutual funds, separate accounts and other pooled investment vehicles. A Fund's portfolio managers may manage a mutual fund, separate account or other pooled investment vehicle that may have a materially higher or lower fee arrangement with the Investment Adviser than each Fund. The side-by-side management of these accounts may raise potential conflicts of interest relating to cross trading, the allocation of investment opportunities and the aggregation and allocation of trades. In addition, while portfolio managers generally only manage accounts with similar investment strategies, it is possible, due to varying investment restrictions among accounts and for other reasons, that certain investments could be made for some accounts and not others or conflicting investment positions could be taken among accounts. The Investment Adviser has a fiduciary responsibility to manage all client accounts in a fair and equitable manner. It seeks to provide best execution of all securities transactions and aggregate and then allocate securities to client accounts in a fair and timely manner. To this end, the Investment Adviser has developed policies and procedures designed to mitigate and manage the potential conflicts of interest that may arise from side-by-side management. In addition, the Investment Adviser and the Trust have adopted policies limiting the circumstances under which cross-trades may be effected between the Funds and another client account. The Investment Adviser conducts periodic reviews of trades for consistency with these policies.

The Investment Adviser will give advice to and make investment decisions for the Trust as it believes is in the fiduciary interest of the Trust. Advice given to the Trust or investment decisions made for the Trust may differ from, and may conflict with, advice given or investment decisions made for the Investment Adviser or its affiliates or other funds or accounts managed by the Investment Adviser or its affiliates. For example, other funds or accounts managed by the Investment Adviser may sell short securities of an issuer in which the Trust has taken, or will take, a long position in the same securities. The subsequent purchase may result in an increase of the price of the underlying position in the short sale exposure of the Trust and such increase in price would be to the Trust's detriment. Conflicts may also arise because portfolio decisions regarding the Trust may benefit the Investment Adviser or its affiliates or another account or fund managed by the Investment Adviser or its affiliates. For example, the sale of a long position or establishment of a short position by the Trust may impair the price of the same security sold short by (and therefore benefit) another account or fund managed by the Investment Adviser or its affiliates, and the purchase of a security or covering a short position in a security by the Trust may increase the price of the same security held by (and therefore benefit) another account or fund managed by the Investment Adviser or its affiliates. Actions taken with respect to the Investment Adviser and its affiliates' other funds or accounts managed by them may adversely impact the Funds, and actions taken by the Funds may benefit the Investment Adviser or its affiliates or its other funds or accounts.

To the extent permitted by applicable law, the Investment Adviser may make payments to authorized dealers and other financial intermediaries ("Intermediaries") from time to time to promote the Funds. These payments may be made out of the Investment Adviser's assets, or amounts payable to the Investment Adviser rather than as a separately identifiable charge to the Funds. These payments may compensate Intermediaries for, among other things: marketing the Funds; access to the Intermediaries' registered representatives or salespersons, including at conferences and other meetings; assistance in training and education of personnel; marketing support; and/or other specified services intended to assist in the distribution and marketing of the Funds. The payments may also, to the extent permitted by applicable regulations, contribute to various non-cash and cash incentive arrangements to promote certain products, as well as sponsor various educational programs, sales contests and/or, administrative services.

## **Portfolio Manager Compensation Structure**

The compensation for the portfolio managers of the Funds is based on the competitive marketplace and consists of a fixed base salary plus a variable annual cash incentive award. In addition, non-cash incentives, such as stock options or restricted stock of Northern Trust Corporation, may be awarded from time to time. The annual incentive award is discretionary and is based on a quantitative and qualitative evaluation of each portfolio manager's investment performance and contribution to his or her respective team plus the financial performance of the investment business unit and Northern Trust Corporation as a whole. The annual incentive award is not based on performance of the Funds or the amount of assets held in each Fund. Moreover, no material differences exist between the compensation structure for Fund accounts and other types of accounts.

## **Disclosure of Securities Ownership**

For the most recently completed fiscal year ended October 31, 2017, the table below provides beneficial ownership of shares of the portfolio managers of the Funds. Please note that the table provides a dollar range of each portfolio manager's holdings in each Fund (None, \$1-\$10,000, \$10,001-\$50,000, \$50,001-\$100,000, \$100,001-\$500,000, \$500,001-\$1,000,000, or over \$1,000,000).

Shares Beneficially Owned by	Fund	Dollar (\$) Range of Shares Beneficially Owned by Portfolio Manager Because of Direct or Indirect Pecuniary Interest
Bradley Camden	FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund	\$1-\$10,000

## PROXY VOTING

The Trust has delegated the voting of portfolio securities to its Investment Adviser. The Investment Adviser has adopted proxy voting policies and procedures applicable to Northern Trust Corporation and its affiliates (the “Northern Proxy Voting Policy”) for the voting of proxies on behalf of client accounts for which the Investment Adviser has voting discretion, including the Funds. Under the Northern Proxy Voting Policy, shares are to be voted in the best interests of the Funds.

A Proxy Committee comprised of senior investment and compliance officers of the Investment Adviser has adopted certain guidelines (the “Proxy Guidelines”) concerning various corporate governance issues. The Proxy Committee has the responsibility for the content, interpretation and application of the Proxy Guidelines and may apply these Proxy Guidelines with a measure of flexibility. The Investment Adviser has retained an independent third party (the “Service Firm”) to review proxy proposals and to make voting recommendations to the Proxy Committee in a manner consistent with the Proxy Guidelines. The Proxy Committee will apply the Proxy Guidelines as discussed below to any such recommendation.

The Proxy Guidelines provide that the Proxy Committee will generally vote for or against various proxy proposals, usually based upon certain specified criteria. As an example, the Proxy Guidelines provide that the Proxy Committee will generally vote in favor of proposals to:

- Appoint a lead independent director;
- Request that the board of a company be comprised of a majority of independent directors;
- Repeal existing classified boards and elect directors on an annual basis;
- Adopt a written majority voting or withhold policy (in situations in which a company has not previously adopted such a policy);
- Request a company to submit its poison pill plans for shareholder ratification;
- Lower supermajority shareholder vote requirements for charter and bylaw amendments;
- Lower supermajority shareholder vote requirements for mergers and other business combinations;
- Reduce the par value of common stock;
- Implement a reverse stock split;
- Approve an ESOP (employee stock ownership plan) or other broad based employee stock purchase or ownership plan, or increase authorized shares for existing plans; and
- Request that a company take reasonable steps to ensure that women and minority candidates are in the pool from which board nominees are chosen or that request that women and minority candidates are routinely sought as part of every board search the company undertakes.

The Proxy Guidelines also provide that the Proxy Committee will generally vote against proposals to:

- Request that the board of a company be comprised of a supermajority of independent directors;
- Elect director nominees that sit on more than four public company boards, or, if the nominee is a CEO, on more than two public company boards;
- Classify the board of directors;
- Require directors to own a minimum amount of company stock in order to qualify as a director or to remain on the board;
- Impose age and term limits unless the company is found to have poor board refreshment and director succession practices;
- Multi class exchange offers and multi class recapitalizations;

- Require a supermajority shareholder vote to approve mergers and other significant business combinations;
- Require a supermajority shareholder vote to approve charter and bylaw amendments;
- Adopt certain social and environmental proposals deemed unwarranted by the company's board of directors; and
- Eliminate, direct, or otherwise restrict charitable contributions.

In certain circumstances, the Proxy Guidelines provide that proxy proposals will be addressed on a case-by-case basis, including those regarding executive and director compensation plans, mergers and acquisitions, ratification of poison pill plans, a change in the company's state of incorporation and an increase in authorized common stock.

Except as otherwise provided in the Northern Proxy Voting Policy, the Proxy Committee may vote proxies contrary to the recommendations of the Service Firm if it determines that such action is in the best interest of a Fund. In exercising its discretion, the Proxy Committee may take into account a wide array of factors relating to the matter under consideration, the nature of the proposal and the company involved. As a result, the Proxy Committee may vote in one manner in the case of one company and in a different manner in the case of another where, for example, the past history of the company, the character and integrity of its management, the role of outside directors, and the company's record of producing performance for investors justifies a high degree of confidence in the company and the effect of the proposal on the value of the investment. Similarly, poor past performance, uncertainties about management and future directions, and other factors may lead the Proxy Committee to conclude that particular proposals present unacceptable investment risks and should not be supported. In addition, the Proxy Committee also evaluates proposals in context. For example, a particular proposal may be acceptable standing alone, but objectionable when part of an existing or proposed package. Special circumstances may also justify casting different votes for different clients with respect to the same proxy vote.

The Investment Adviser or its affiliates may occasionally be subject to conflicts of interest in the voting of proxies due to business or personal relationships it maintains with persons having an interest in the outcome of certain votes. For example, the Investment Adviser or its affiliates may provide trust, custody, investment management, brokerage, underwriting, banking and related services to accounts owned or controlled by companies whose management is soliciting proxies. Occasionally, the Investment Adviser or its affiliates may also have business or personal relationships with other proponents of proxy proposals, participants in proxy contests, corporate directors or candidates for directorships. The Investment Adviser may also be required to vote proxies for securities issued by Northern Trust Corporation or its affiliates or on matters in which the Investment Adviser or its affiliates have a direct financial interest, such as shareholder approval of a change in the advisory fees paid by a Fund. The Investment Adviser seeks to address such conflicts of interest through various measures, including the establishment, composition and authority of the Proxy Committee and the retention of the Service Firm to perform proxy review and vote recommendation functions. The Proxy Committee has the responsibility to determine whether a proxy vote involves a conflict of interest and how the conflict should be addressed in conformance with the Northern Proxy Voting Policy. The Proxy Committee may resolve such conflicts in any of a variety of ways, including without limitation the following: (i) voting in accordance with the Proxy Guidelines based recommendation of the Service Firm; (ii) voting in accordance with the recommendation of an independent fiduciary appointed for that purpose; (iii) voting pursuant to client direction by seeking instructions from the Board of Trustees; or (iv) by voting pursuant to a "mirror voting" arrangement under which shares are voted in the same manner and proportion as shares over which the Investment Adviser does not have voting discretion. The method selected by the Proxy Committee may vary depending upon the facts and circumstances of each situation.

The Investment Adviser may choose not to vote proxies in certain situations. This may occur, for example, in situations where the exercise of voting rights could restrict the ability to freely trade the security in question (as is the case, for example, in certain foreign jurisdictions known as "blocking markets"). In circumstances in which the Service Firm does not provide recommendations for a particular proxy, the Proxy Committee may obtain recommendations from analysts at the Investment Adviser who review the issuer in question or the industry in general. The Proxy Committee will apply the Proxy Guidelines as discussed above to any such recommendation.

This summary of the Northern Proxy Voting Policy and Proxy Guidelines, as adopted by the Investment Adviser, is posted on the Trust's website. You may also obtain, upon request and without charge, a paper copy of the Northern Proxy Voting Policy and Proxy Guidelines or a Statement of Additional Information by calling 1-855-FLEXETF (1-855-353-9383).

Information regarding how the Funds voted proxies, if any, relating to portfolio securities for the most recent 12-month period ended June 30 will be made available, without charge, upon request, by contacting the Investment Adviser at 1-855-FLEXETF or by visiting the SEC's website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov).

## **ADMINISTRATOR**

JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A. (the “Administrator”), One Beacon Street, Boston, Massachusetts 02108, acts as Administrator for the Funds under a Fund Servicing Agreement with the Trust. Subject to the general supervision of the Trust’s Board of Trustees, the Administrator provides supervision of all aspects of the Trust’s non-investment advisory operations and performs various administration, compliance, accounting and regulatory services, including but not limited to: (i) providing office facilities and furnishing corporate officers for the Trust; (ii) coordination, preparation and review of financial statements; (iii) monitoring compliance with federal tax and securities laws; (iv) performing certain functions ordinarily performed by the office of a corporate treasurer, and furnishing the services and facilities ordinarily incident thereto, such as expense accrual monitoring and payment of the Trust’s bills, preparing monthly reconciliation of the Trust’s expense records, updating projections of annual expenses, preparing materials for review by the Board of Trustees and compliance testing; (v) maintaining the Trust books and records in accordance with applicable statutes, rules and regulations; (vi) preparing post-effective amendments to the Trust’s registration statement; (vii) calculating each Fund’s NAV; (viii) accounting for dividends and interest received and distributions made by the Trust; and (ix) preparing and filing the Trust’s federal and state tax returns (other than those required to be filed by the Trust’s Custodian and Transfer Agent) and providing shareholder tax information to the Trust’s Transfer Agent.

Subject to the limitations described below, as compensation for its administrative services and the assumption of related expenses, the Administrator is entitled to asset-based fees for accounting and administration services, subject to a certain minimum fee. The Administration Agreement will continue until August 31, 2018 unless sooner terminated pursuant to the agreement and renew each year thereafter unless at least sixty days notice is given prior to the end of the term. Under the Advisory Agreement, the Investment Adviser has contractually assumed the Trust’s obligation to pay the fees of the Administrator.

## **DISTRIBUTOR**

Foreside Fund Services, LLC (“Foreside” or the “Distributor”), a Delaware limited liability company, serves as the distributor of Creation Units for the Funds on an agency basis. The Trust has entered into a Distribution Agreement under which Foreside, as agent, receives orders from Authorized Participants to create and redeem shares in Creation Unit Aggregations and transmits such orders to the Trust’s Custodian and Transfer Agent. The Distributor’s principal address is Three Canal Plaza, Portland, Maine 04101. The Distributor is a broker-dealer registered under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “1934 Act”), and a member of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (“FINRA”). Shares will be continuously offered for sale by the Trust through the Distributor only in whole Creation Units, as described in the section of this SAI entitled “Purchase and Redemption of Creation Units Aggregations.” The Distributor also acts as an agent for the Trust for those activities described within the Distribution Agreement. The Distributor will deliver a prospectus to Authorized Participants purchasing Shares in Creation Units and will maintain records of both orders placed with it and confirmations of acceptance furnished by it to Authorized Participants. The Distributor has no role in determining the investment policies of the Funds or which securities are to be purchased or sold by the Funds. No compensation is payable by the Trust to Foreside for such distribution services. However, the Investment Adviser has entered into an agreement with Foreside under which it makes payments to Foreside in consideration for its services under the Distribution Agreement. The payments made by the Investment Adviser to Foreside do not represent an additional expense to the Trust or its shareholders.

## **DISTRIBUTION AND SERVICE PLAN**

As stated in the Funds’ Prospectus, the Trust has adopted a Distribution and Service Plan pursuant to Rule 12b-1 with respect to shares of the Funds. However, no 12b-1 fee is currently charged to the Funds, and the Funds do not expect to pay any 12b-1 fees during the current and next fiscal years. Pursuant to the Plan, a Fund may enter into agreements from time to time with financial intermediaries providing for support and/or distribution services to customers of the financial intermediaries who are the beneficial owners of Fund shares. Under the agreements, a Fund may pay financial intermediaries up to 0.25% (on an annualized basis) of the average daily NAV of the shares beneficially owned by their customers. Distribution services may include: (i) services in connection with distribution assistance, or (ii) payments to financial institutions and other financial intermediaries, such as broker-dealers and mutual fund “supermarkets,” as compensation for services or reimbursement of expenses incurred in connection with distribution assistance.

Any amendment to increase materially the costs under the Distribution and Service Plan with respect to a Fund must be approved by the holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of the Fund. So long as the Distribution and Service Plan is in effect, the selection and nomination of the members of the Board of Trustees who are not “interested persons” (as defined in the 1940 Act) of the Trust will be committed to the discretion of such Non-Interested Trustees.

## **TRANSFER AGENT**

JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A. (the “Transfer Agent”) acts as Transfer Agent for the Funds under an Agency Services Agreement with the Trust. The Transfer Agent has undertaken to perform some or all of the following services: (i) perform and facilitate the performance of purchases and redemptions of Creation Units; (ii) prepare and transmit payments for dividends and



distributions; (iii) record the issuance of shares and maintain records of the number of authorized shares; (iv) prepare and transmit information regarding purchases and redemptions of shares; (v) communicate information regarding purchases and redemptions of shares and other relevant information to appropriate parties; (vi) maintain required books and records; and (vii) perform other customary services of a transfer agent and dividend disbursing agent for an ETF (exchange traded fund).

As compensation for the services rendered by the Transfer Agent under the Agency Services Agreement the Transfer Agent is entitled to reasonable out-of-pocket or incidental expenses as provided under the Agency Services Agreement. The Agency Services Agreement will continue until August 31, 2018 unless sooner terminated pursuant to the agreement and renew each year thereafter unless at least sixty days' notice is given prior to the end of a term. Under the Advisory Agreement, the Investment Adviser has contractually assumed the Trust's obligation to pay the expenses of the Transfer Agent.

## CUSTODIAN

JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A. (the "Custodian") acts as Custodian for the Funds under a Global Custody Agreement with the Trust. The Custodian (i) holds each Fund's cash and securities; (ii) maintains such cash and securities in separate accounts in the name of each Fund; (iii) receives, delivers and releases securities on behalf of each Fund; (iv) collects and receives all income, principal and other payments in respect of each Fund's investments held by the Custodian; and (v) maintains a statement of account for each account of the Trust. The Custodian may employ one or more sub-custodians, provided that the Custodian shall be liable for direct losses due to the sub-custodian's insolvency or the sub-custodian's failure to use reasonable care, fraud or willful default in the provision of its services. The Custodian will enter into agreements with financial institutions and depositories located in foreign countries with respect to the custody of the Fund's foreign securities.

As compensation for the services rendered under the Global Custody Agreement with respect to the Trust by the Custodian to each Fund, the Custodian is entitled to fees and reasonable out-of-pocket expenses. The Global Custody Agreement will continue until August 31, 2018 unless sooner terminated pursuant to the agreement and renew each year thereafter unless at least sixty days' notice is given prior to the end of a term. Under the Advisory Agreement, the Investment Adviser has contractually assumed the Trust's obligation to pay the fees and expenses of the Custodian.

JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A. also serves as securities lending agent for the Funds. For such services, JPMorgan receives a percentage of securities lending revenue generated for the Funds.

The following table sets forth the administration, custodian and transfer agency expenses of each Fund in existence paid by the Investment Adviser to JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A. for the fiscal years noted:

Fund	Inception Date	Administration, Custodian, Transfer Agency Expenses Paid During the Period or Fiscal Year Ended October 31, 2017	Administration, Custodian, Transfer Agency Expenses Paid During Fiscal Year Ended October 31, 2016	Administration, Custodian, Transfer Agency Expenses Paid During Fiscal Year Ended October 31, 2015
FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund	10/9/2012	\$64,991	\$44,645	\$32,319
FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund	11/18/2016	\$ 4,803	-	-

## SECURITIES LENDING AGENT

JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A. (the "Securities Lending Agent") acts as Securities Lending Agent for the Funds under a Securities Lending Agreement with the Trust. The Securities Lending Agent (i) arranges and administers the loan of securities when establishing a loan and the return of securities upon termination of a loan, (ii) collects from borrowers cash, securities or other instruments to serve as collateral for the loans, (iii) monitors the value of securities on loan and the value of the corresponding collateral, (iv) communicates to each borrower the minimum amount of collateral required for each loan and collects additional collateral as required on a daily basis to maintain such minimum, (v) collects or arranges for the collection of any interest, dividends or other distributions related to loaned securities, and (vi) performs other necessary services related to the establishment and maintenance of the Trust's securities lending program. The Securities Lending Agreement will continue indefinitely and may be terminated by either party on sixty days' notice to the other.

The FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund and FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund did not participate in securities lending during the fiscal year ended October 31, 2017.

## DESCRIPTION OF SHARES

The Declaration of Trust of the Trust (the “Declaration”) permits the Trust’s Board of Trustees to cause the Trust to issue an unlimited number of full and fractional shares of beneficial interest of one or more separate series representing interests in one or more investment portfolios. The Trustees or Trust may create additional series and each series may be divided into classes.

Under the terms of the Declaration, each share of each Fund has a par value of \$0.0001, and represents a proportionate interest in the particular Fund with each other share of its class in the same Fund and is entitled to such dividends and distributions out of the assets belonging to the Fund as are authorized by the Trustees and declared by the Trust. Upon any liquidation of a Fund, shareholders of each class of a Fund are entitled to share pro rata in the net assets belonging to that class available for distribution. Shares do not have any preemptive or conversion rights. The right of redemption is described under “Shareholder Information” in the Prospectus. In addition, pursuant to the terms of the 1940 Act, the right of a shareholder to redeem shares and the date of payment by a Fund may be suspended for more than seven days (i) for any period during that the New York Stock Exchange is closed, other than the customary weekends or holidays, or trading in the markets the Fund normally utilizes is closed or is restricted as determined by the SEC, (ii) during any emergency, as determined by the SEC, as a result of which it is not reasonably practicable for the Fund to dispose of instruments owned by it or fairly to determine the value of its net assets, or (iii) for such other period as the SEC may by order permit for the protection of the shareholders of the Fund. The Trust also may suspend or postpone the recording of the transfer of its shares upon the occurrence of any of the foregoing conditions. In addition, shares of each Fund are redeemable at the unilateral option of the Trust. The Declaration permits the Board to alter the number of shares constituting a Creation Unit or to specify that shares of beneficial interest of the Trust may be individually redeemable. Shares when issued as described in the Prospectus are validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable. In the interests of economy and convenience, certificates representing shares of the Funds are not issued.

The proceeds received by each Fund for each issue or sale of its shares, and all net investment income, realized and unrealized gain and proceeds thereof, subject only to the rights of creditors, will be specifically allocated to and constitute the underlying assets of that Fund. The underlying assets of each Fund will be segregated on the books of account, and will be charged with the liabilities in respect to that Fund and with a share of the general liabilities of the Trust. Expenses with respect to the funds of the Trust normally are allocated in proportion to the NAV of the respective funds except where allocations of direct expenses can otherwise be fairly made.

Each Fund and other funds of the Trust entitled to vote on a matter will vote in the aggregate and not by fund, except as required by law or when the matter to be voted on affects only the interests of shareholders of a particular fund or funds.

Rule 18f-2 under the 1940 Act provides that any matter required by the provisions of the 1940 Act or applicable state law, or otherwise, to be submitted to the holders of the outstanding voting securities of an investment company such as the Trust shall not be deemed to have been effectively acted upon unless approved by the holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of each investment portfolio affected by such matter. Rule 18f-2 further provides that an investment portfolio shall be deemed to be affected by a matter unless the interests of each investment portfolio in the matter are substantially identical or the matter does not affect any interest of the investment portfolio. Under the Rule, the approval of an investment advisory agreement, a distribution plan subject to Rule 12b-1 under the 1940 Act or any change in a fundamental investment policy would be effectively acted upon with respect to an investment portfolio only if approved by a majority of the outstanding shares of such investment portfolio. However, the Rule also provides that the ratification of the appointment of independent accountants, the approval of principal underwriting contracts and the election of Trustees are exempt from the separate voting requirements stated above.

The Trust is not required to hold annual meetings of shareholders and does not intend to hold such meetings. In the event that a meeting of shareholders is held, each share of the Trust will be entitled, as determined by the Trustees without the vote or consent of shareholders, either to one vote for each share or to one vote for each dollar of NAV represented by such shares on all matters presented to shareholders, including the election of Trustees (this method of voting being referred to as “dollar-based voting”). However, to the extent required by the 1940 Act or otherwise determined by the Trustees, series and classes of the Trust will vote separately from each other. Shareholders of the Trust do not have cumulative voting rights in the election of Trustees and, accordingly, the holders of more than 50% of the aggregate voting power of the Trust may elect all of the Trustees, irrespective of the vote of the other shareholders. Meetings of shareholders of the Trust, or any series or class thereof, may be called by the Trustees or upon the written request of holders of at least a majority of the shares entitled to vote at such meeting. The shareholders of the Trust will have voting rights only with respect to the limited number of matters specified in the Declaration and such other matters as the Trustees may determine or may be required by law.

The Declaration authorizes the Trustees, without shareholder approval (except as stated in the next paragraph), to cause the Trust, or any series thereof, to merge or consolidate with any corporation, association, trust or other organization or sell or exchange all or substantially all of the property belonging to the Trust, or any series thereof. In addition, the Trustees, without shareholder approval, may adopt a “master-feeder” structure by investing substantially all of the assets of a series of the Trust in the securities of another open-end investment company or pooled portfolio.

The Declaration also authorizes the Trustees, in connection with the termination or other reorganization of the Trust or any series or class by way of merger, consolidation, the sale of all or substantially all of the assets, or otherwise, to classify the shareholders of any class into one or more separate groups and to provide for the different treatment of shares held by the different groups, provided that such termination or reorganization is approved by a majority of the outstanding voting securities (as defined in the 1940 Act) of each group of shareholders that are so classified.

The Declaration permits the Trustees to amend the Declaration without a shareholder vote. However, shareholders of the Trust have the right to vote on any amendment: (i) that would adversely affect the voting rights of shareholders specified in the Declaration; (ii) that is required by law to be approved by shareholders; (iii) to the amendment section of the Declaration; or (iv) that the Trustees determine to submit to shareholders.

The Declaration permits the termination of the Trust or of any series or class of the Trust: (i) by a majority of the affected shareholders at a meeting of shareholders of the Trust, series or class; or (ii) by a majority of the Trustees without shareholder approval if the Trustees determine that such action is in the best interest of the Trust or its shareholders. The factors and events that the Trustees may take into account in making such determination include: (i) the inability of the Trust or any series or class to maintain its assets at an appropriate size; (ii) changes in laws or regulations governing the Trust, or any series or class thereof, or affecting assets of the type in which it invests; or (iii) economic developments or trends having a significant adverse impact on their business or operations.

In the event of a termination of the Trust or the Fund, the Board, in its sole discretion, could determine to permit the shares to be redeemable in aggregations smaller than Creation Unit Aggregations or to be individually redeemable. In such circumstance, the Trust may make redemptions in-kind, for cash, or for a combination of cash or securities.

Under the Maryland Statutory Trust Act (the "Maryland Act"), shareholders are not personally liable for obligations of the Trust. The Maryland Act entitles shareholders of the Trust to the same limitation of liability as is available to stockholders of corporations incorporated in the State of Maryland. However, no similar statutory or other authority limiting business trust shareholder liability exists in many other states. As a result, to the extent that the Trust or a shareholder is subject to the jurisdiction of courts in such other states, those courts may not apply Maryland law and may subject the shareholders to liability. To offset this risk, the Declaration: (i) contains an express disclaimer of shareholder liability for acts or obligations of the Trust and provides that notice of such disclaimer may be given in each agreement, obligation and instrument entered into or executed by the Trust or its Trustees and (ii) provides for indemnification out of the property of the applicable series of the Trust of any shareholder held personally liable for the obligations of the Trust solely by reason of being or having been a shareholder and not because of the shareholder's acts or omissions or for some other reason. Thus, the risk of a shareholder incurring financial loss beyond his or her investment because of shareholder liability is limited to circumstances in which all of the following factors are present: (i) a court refuses to apply Maryland law; (ii) the liability arises under tort law or, if not, no contractual limitation of liability is in effect; and (iii) the applicable series of the Trust is unable to meet its obligations.

The Declaration provides that the Trustees will not be liable to any person other than the Trust or a shareholder and that a Trustee will not be liable for any act as a Trustee. Additionally, subject to applicable federal law, no person who is or who has been a Trustee or officer of the Trust shall be liable to the Trust or to any shareholder for money damages except for liability resulting from (a) actual receipt of an improper benefit or profit in money, property or services or (b) active and deliberate dishonesty established by a final judgment and which is material to the cause of action. However, nothing in the Declaration protects a Trustee against any liability to which he or she would otherwise be subject by reason of willful misfeasance, bad faith, gross negligence or reckless disregard of the duties involved in the conduct of his or her office. The Declaration requires indemnification of Trustees and officers of the Trust unless the recipient is liable by reason of willful misfeasance, bad faith, gross negligence or reckless disregard of the duties involved in the conduct of such person's office.

The Declaration provides that each shareholder, by virtue of becoming such, will be held to have expressly assented and agreed to the terms of the Declaration and the Bylaws of the Trust.

The Declaration provides that a shareholder of the Trust may bring a derivative action on behalf of the Trust only if the following conditions are met: (i) shareholders who hold at least 10% of the outstanding shares of the Trust, or 10% of the outstanding shares of the series or class to which such action relates, must join in the request for the Trustees to commence such action; and (ii) the Trustees must be afforded a reasonable amount of time to consider such shareholder request and to investigate the basis of such claim. The Declaration also provides that no person, other than the Trustees, who is not a shareholder of a particular series or class shall be entitled to bring any derivative action, suit or other proceeding on behalf of or with respect to such series or class. The Trustees will be entitled to retain counsel or other advisers in considering the merits of the request and may require an undertaking by the shareholders making such request to reimburse the Trust for the expense of any such advisers in the event that the Trustees determine not to bring such action.

The Trustees may appoint separate Trustees with respect to one or more series or classes of the Trust's shares (the "Series Trustees"). To the extent provided by the Trustees in the appointment of Series Trustees, Series Trustees: (i) may, but are not required to, serve as Trustees of the Trust or any other series or class of the Trust; (ii) may have, to the exclusion of any other Trustee of the Trust, all the powers and authorities of Trustees under the Declaration with respect to such series or class; and/or (iii) may have no power or authority with respect to any other series or class.

The term "majority of the outstanding shares" of either the Trust or a particular Fund or another investment portfolio of the Trust means, with respect to the approval of an investment advisory agreement, a distribution plan or a change in a fundamental investment policy, the vote of the lesser of (i) 67% or more of the shares of the Trust or such Fund or portfolio present at a meeting, if the holders of more than 50% of the outstanding shares of the Trust or such Fund or portfolio are present or represented by proxy, or (ii) more than 50% of the outstanding shares of the Trust or such Fund or portfolio.

Absent an applicable exemption or other relief from the SEC or its staff, beneficial owners of more than 5% of the shares of a Fund may be subject to the reporting provisions of Section 13 of the 1934 Act and the SEC's rules promulgated thereunder. In addition, absent an applicable exemption or other relief from the SEC staff, Officers and Trustees of a Fund and beneficial owners of 10% of the shares of a Fund ("Insiders") may be subject to the insider reporting, short-swing profit and short sale provisions of Section 16 of the 1934 Act and the SEC's rules promulgated thereunder. Beneficial owners and Insiders should consult with their own legal counsel concerning their obligations under Sections 13 and 16 of the 1934 Act.

On September 24, 2015, the Board of Trustees of the Trust adopted an amendment to the Trust's By-Laws to establish the state and federal courts sitting in the State of Maryland as the sole and exclusive forums for any shareholder (including a beneficial owner) to bring (i) any action or proceeding brought on behalf of the Trust, (ii) any action asserting a claim or breach of a fiduciary duty owed by any Trustee, officer or employee, if any, of the Trust to the Trust or the Trust's shareholders, (iii) any action asserting a claim against the Trust, its Trustees, officers or employees, if any, arising pursuant to any provision of the Maryland Statutory Trust Act or the Trust's Trust Instrument or bylaw; or (iv) any action asserting a claim against the Trust, its Trustees, officers or employees, if any, governed by the internal affairs doctrine.

#### **BOOK-ENTRY ONLY SYSTEM**

The following information supplements and should be read in conjunction with the Shareholder Information section in the Prospectus.

The Depository Trust Company ("DTC") acts as Securities Depository for the Shares of the Trust. Shares of each Fund are represented by securities registered in the name of DTC or its nominee and deposited with, or on behalf of, DTC.

DTC, a limited-purpose trust company, was created to hold securities of its participants (the "DTC Participants") and to facilitate the clearance and settlement of securities transactions among the DTC Participants in such securities through electronic book-entry changes in accounts of the DTC Participants, thereby eliminating the need for physical movement of securities' certificates. DTC Participants include securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations and certain other organizations, some of whom (and/or their representatives) own DTC. More specifically, DTC is a subsidiary of the Depository Trust and Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"), which is owned by its member firms including international broker/dealers, correspondent and clearing banks, mutual fund companies and investment banks. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as banks, brokers, dealers and Trust companies that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a DTC Participant, either directly or indirectly (the "Indirect Participants").

Beneficial ownership of shares is limited to DTC Participants, Indirect Participants and persons holding interests through DTC Participants and Indirect Participants. Ownership of beneficial interests in Fund shares (owners of such beneficial interests are referred to herein as "Beneficial Owners") is shown on, and the transfer of ownership is effected only through, records maintained by DTC (with respect to DTC Participants) and on the records of DTC Participants (with respect to Indirect Participants and Beneficial Owners that are not DTC Participants). Beneficial Owners will receive from or through the DTC Participant a written confirmation relating to their purchase of shares. The laws of some jurisdictions may require that certain purchasers of securities take physical delivery of such securities in definitive form. Such laws may impair the ability of certain investors to acquire beneficial interests in shares.

Beneficial Owners of shares are not entitled to have shares registered in their names, will not receive or be entitled to receive physical delivery of certificates in definitive form and are not considered the registered holder thereof. Accordingly, each Beneficial Owner must rely on the procedures of DTC, the DTC Participant and any Indirect Participant through which such Beneficial Owner holds its interests, to exercise any rights of a holder of shares. The Trust understands that under existing industry practice, in the event the Trust requests any action of holders of shares, or a Beneficial Owner desires to take any action that DTC, as the record owner of all outstanding shares, is entitled to take, DTC would authorize the DTC Participants to take such action

and that the DTC Participants would authorize the Indirect Participants and Beneficial Owners acting through such DTC Participants to take such action and would otherwise act upon the instructions of Beneficial Owners owning through them. As described above, the Trust recognizes DTC or its nominee as the owner of all shares for all purposes.

Conveyance of all notices, statements and other communications to Beneficial Owners is effected as follows. Pursuant to the Depositary Agreement between the Trust and DTC, DTC is required to make available to the Trust upon request and for a fee to be charged to the Trust a listing of the share holdings of each DTC Participant. The Trust shall inquire of each such DTC Participant as to the number of Beneficial Owners holding shares of the Funds, directly or indirectly, through such DTC Participant. The Trust shall provide each such DTC Participant with copies of such notice, statement or other communication, in such form, number and at such place as such DTC Participant may reasonably request, in order that such notice, statement or communication may be transmitted by such DTC Participant, directly or indirectly, to such Beneficial Owners. In addition, the Trust shall pay to each such DTC Participant a fair and reasonable amount as reimbursement for the expenses attendant to such transmittal, all subject to applicable statutory and regulatory requirements.

Share distributions shall be made to DTC or its nominee, Cede & Co., as the registered holder of all shares of the Trust. DTC or its nominee, upon receipt of any such distributions, shall credit immediately DTC Participants' accounts with payments in amounts proportionate to their respective beneficial interests in shares as shown on the records of DTC or its nominee. Payments by DTC Participants to Indirect Participants and Beneficial Owners of shares held through such DTC Participants will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is now the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in a "street name," and will be the responsibility of such DTC Participants. The Trust has no responsibility or liability for any aspects of the records relating to or notices to Beneficial Owners, or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests in such shares, or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests or for any other aspect of the relationship between DTC and the DTC Participants or the relationship between such DTC Participants and the Indirect Participants and Beneficial Owners owning through such DTC Participants.

DTC may determine to discontinue providing its service with respect to shares of the Trust at any time by giving reasonable notice to the Trust and discharging its responsibilities with respect thereto under applicable law. Under such circumstances, the Trust shall take action either to find a replacement for DTC to perform its functions at a comparable cost or, if such a replacement is unavailable, to issue and deliver printed certificates representing ownership of shares, unless the Trust makes other arrangements with respect thereto satisfactory to the Listing Exchange on which shares are listed.

## **PURCHASE AND REDEMPTION OF CREATION UNIT AGGREGATIONS**

### **CREATION UNIT AGGREGATIONS**

The Trust issues and sells shares of each Fund only in Creation Unit Aggregations. The Board of Trustees reserves the right to declare a split or a consolidation in the number of shares outstanding of any Fund of the Trust, and to make a corresponding change in the number of shares constituting a Creation Unit, in the event that the per share price in the secondary market rises (or declines) to an amount that falls outside the range deemed desirable by the Board of Trustees.

### **PURCHASE AND ISSUANCE OF CREATION UNIT AGGREGATIONS**

**General.** The Trust issues and sells shares of each Fund only in Creation Units on a continuous basis through the Distributor, without a sales load, at the Fund's NAV next determined after receipt, on any Business Day (as defined herein), of an order in proper form. A "Business Day" with respect to each Fund is any day on which the Listing Exchange is open for business. As of the date of this SAI, each Listing Exchange observes the following holidays, as observed: New Year's Day, Martin Luther King, Jr. Day, Presidents' Day, Good Friday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Thanksgiving Day and Christmas Day.

**Portfolio Deposit.** Unless cash purchases are specified for a Fund, the consideration for purchase of a Creation Unit of shares of a Fund generally consists of the in-kind deposit of a designated portfolio of securities and other instruments (the "Deposit Securities") generally corresponding pro rata (except in certain circumstances) to the Fund's portfolio positions, and an amount of cash computed as described below (the "Cash Component"). Together, the Deposit Securities and the Cash Component constitute the "Portfolio Deposit," which represents the minimum initial and subsequent investment amount for shares of a Fund. The Cash Component is an amount equal to the Balancing Amount (as defined below). The "Balancing Amount" is an amount equal to the difference between (x) the NAV (per Creation Unit) of the Fund and (y) the "Deposit Amount", which is the market value (per Creation Unit) of the securities deposited with the Trust. The Balancing Amount serves the function of compensating for any differences between the NAV per Creation Unit and the Deposit Amount. If the Balancing Amount is a positive number (*i.e.*, the NAV per Creation Unit is more than the Deposit Amount), the Authorized Participant will deliver the Balancing Amount. If the Balancing Amount is a negative number (*i.e.*, the NAV per Creation Unit is less than the Deposit Amount), the Authorized Participant will receive the Balancing Amount. Payment of any stamp duty or other similar fees and expenses payable upon transfer of beneficial ownership of the Deposit Securities shall be the sole responsibility of the Authorized Participant that

purchased the Creation Unit. The Authorized Participant must ensure that all Deposit Securities properly denote change in beneficial ownership.

NTI makes available through the National Securities Clearing Corporation (“NSCC”) on each Business Day, prior to the opening of business on the Listing Exchange (currently 9:30 a.m., Eastern time), the list of the names and the required quantity of each Deposit Security to be included in the current Portfolio Deposit (based on information at the end of the previous Business Day) for each Fund. Such Portfolio Deposit is applicable, subject to any adjustments as described below, in order to effect purchases of Creation Units of a given Fund until such time as the next-announced Portfolio Deposit composition is made available.

On a given Business Day, the Trust may require all Authorized Participants purchasing Creation Units on that day to deposit an amount of cash (that is a “cash in lieu” amount) to replace any Deposit Security that may not be eligible for transfer through the systems of DTC or the Clearing Process (discussed below) or, in the case of a non-U.S. Deposit Security, the security or instrument is not eligible for trading due to local trading restrictions, local restrictions on securities transfers or other similar circumstances. The Trust also reserves the right to permit a “cash in lieu” to replace any Deposit Security which may not be available in sufficient quantity or which may not be eligible for trading by an Authorized Participant or the investor on whose behalf the Authorized Participant is acting. The Trust may in its discretion require an Authorized Participant to purchase Creation Units of a Fund in cash, rather than in-kind. On a given Business Day, the Trust may announce before the open of trading that all purchases of Creation Units of a Fund on that day will be made entirely in cash or, upon receiving a purchase order for Creation Units of a Fund from an Authorized Participant, the Trust may determine to require that purchase to be made entirely in cash.

In addition to the list of names and numbers of securities constituting the current Deposit Securities of a Portfolio Deposit, on each Business Day, the Cash Component effective through and including the previous Business Day, per outstanding Creation Unit of each Fund, will be made available.

**Procedures For Creation of Creation Units.** To be eligible to place orders with the Distributor and to create a Creation Unit of a Fund, an entity must be a DTC Participant, and must have executed an agreement with the Distributor, with respect to creations and redemptions of Creation Units (“Participant Agreement”) (discussed below). A DTC Participant who has executed a Participant Agreement is referred to as an “Authorized Participant.” Investors should contact the Distributor for the names of Authorized Participants. All shares of the Fund, however created, will be entered on the records of DTC in the name of Cede & Co. for the account of a DTC Participant.

Except as described below, all creation orders must be placed for one or more Creation Units and must be received by the Distributor in proper form no later than the closing time of the regular trading session of the Listing Exchange (normally 4:00 p.m., Eastern time) (“Closing Time”) on any Business Day in order for creation of Creation Units to be effected based on the NAV of shares of a Fund as next determined on such date. The date on which an order to create Creation Units (or an order to redeem Creation Units, as discussed below) is timely received in proper form is referred to as the “Transmittal Date.” Orders must be transmitted by an Authorized Participant by telephone or other transmission method acceptable to the Distributor pursuant to procedures set forth in the Participant Agreement, as described below. Economic or market disruptions or changes, or telephone or other communication failure, may impede the ability to reach the Distributor or an Authorized Participant.

All orders to create Creation Units shall be placed with an Authorized Participant in the form required by such Authorized Participant. In addition, an Authorized Participant may request that an investor make certain representations or enter into agreements with respect to an order (*e.g.*, to provide for payments of cash). Investors should be aware that their particular broker may not have executed a Participant Agreement and, therefore, orders to create Creation Units of a Fund will have to be placed by the investor’s broker through an Authorized Participant. In such cases, there may be additional charges to such investor. A limited number of broker-dealers have executed a Participant Agreement and only a small number of such Authorized Participants have international capabilities. Investors placing orders for Creation Units of a Fund should ascertain the applicable deadline for DTC and the Federal Reserve Bank wire system, as well as cash transfers, by contacting the operations department of the broker or depository institution making the transfer of the Deposit Securities and/or Cash Component. This deadline is likely to be significantly earlier than the closing time of the regular trading session on the applicable Listing Exchange. Investors should be aware that the Authorized Participant may require orders for Creation Units placed with it to be in the form required by the individual Authorized Participant, which form may not be the same as the form of purchase order specified by the Trust that the Authorized Participant must deliver to the Distributor.

**Placement of Creation Orders For The Funds.** The clearance and settlement of Creation Units will depend on the nature of each security, consistent with the processes discussed below. Fund Deposits made outside the Continuous Net Settlement System of the NSCC (the “Clearing Process”) must be delivered through a DTC Participant that has executed a Participant Agreement. A DTC participant who wishes to place an order creating Creation Units to be effected outside the Clearing Process does not need to be a broker-dealer or other participant in the Clearing Process NSCC (“Participating Party”), but such orders must state that the DTC Participant is not using the Clearing Process and that the creation of Creation Units will instead be effected

through a transfer of securities (other than U.S. government securities) directly through DTC, or through a transfer of U.S. government securities and cash directly through the Federal Reserve System. The Fund Deposit transfer must be ordered by the DTC Participant on the Transmittal Date in a timely fashion so as to ensure the delivery of the requisite number of Deposit Securities through DTC to the account of the Fund by no later than 2:00 p.m., Eastern time, on the "Settlement Date." The Settlement Date is typically the first Business Day, but could be up to the second Business Day, following the Transmittal Date. In certain cases Authorized Participants will create and redeem Creation Units of the same Fund on the same trade date. In these instances, the Trust reserves the right to settle these transactions on a net basis. All questions as to the number of Deposit Securities to be delivered, and the validity, form and eligibility (including time of receipt) for the deposit of any tendered securities, will be determined by the Trust, whose determination shall be final and binding.

The amount of cash equal to the Cash Component must be transferred directly to the Custodian through the Federal Reserve Bank wire transfer system in a timely manner so as to be received by the Custodian no later than 2:00 p.m., Eastern time, on the Settlement Date. An order to create Creation Units outside the Clearing Process is deemed received by the Distributor on the Transmittal Date if: (i) such order is received by the Distributor not later than the Closing Time on such Transmittal Date; and (ii) all other procedures set forth in the Participant Agreement are properly followed. However, if the Custodian does not receive both the required Deposit Securities and the Cash Component by 2:00 p.m., Eastern time on the Settlement Date, such order may be canceled. Upon written notice to the Distributor, such canceled order may be resubmitted the following Business Day using a Fund Deposit as newly constituted to reflect the then current NAV of the Fund. The delivery of Creation Units so created generally will occur no later than the Settlement Date. Creation Units may be created in advance of receipt by the Trust of all or a portion of the applicable Deposit Securities as described below. In these circumstances, the initial deposit will have a value greater than the NAV of the shares on the date the order is placed in proper form since, in addition to available Deposit Securities, cash must be deposited in an amount equal to the sum of: (i) the Cash Component; plus (ii) at least 110%, which NTI may change from time to time, of the market value of the undelivered Deposit Securities (the "Additional Cash Deposit") with the Fund pending delivery of any missing Deposit Securities.

If an Authorized Participant determines to post an additional cash deposit as collateral for any undelivered Deposit Securities, such Authorized Participant must deposit with the Custodian the appropriate amount of U.S. Dollar cash by 2:00 p.m., Eastern time, on the date of requested settlement. If the Authorized Participant does not place its purchase order by the closing time or the Custodian does not receive federal funds in the appropriate amount by such time, then the order may be deemed to be rejected and the Authorized Participant shall be liable to the Fund for any resulting losses. An additional amount of cash shall be required to be deposited with the Custodian, pending delivery of the missing Deposit Securities to the extent necessary to maintain the Additional Cash Deposit with the Trust in an amount at least equal to 110%, which NTI may change from time to time, of the daily marked to market value of the missing Deposit Securities. To the extent that missing Deposit Securities are not received by 2:00 p.m., Eastern time, on the Settlement Date or in the event a marked-to-market payment is not made within one Business Day following notification by the Distributor that such a payment is required, the Trust may use the cash on deposit to purchase the missing Deposit Securities. Authorized Participants will be liable to the Trust for the costs incurred by the Trust in connection with any such purchases. These costs will be deemed to include the amount by which the actual purchase price of the Deposit Securities exceeds the market value of such Deposit Securities on the transmittal date plus the brokerage and related transaction costs associated with such purchases. The Trust will return any unused portion of the Additional Cash Deposit once all of the missing Deposit Securities have been properly received by the Custodian or purchased by the Trust and deposited into the Trust. In addition, a transaction fee, as listed below, will be charged. The delivery of Creation Units so created generally will occur no later than the Settlement Date.

With respect to any non-U.S. Deposit Securities, NTI shall cause the sub-custodians of the Fund to maintain an account into which the Authorized Participant shall deliver, on behalf of itself or the party on whose behalf it is acting, the securities included in the designated Deposit Securities and/or cash. Deposit Securities must be delivered to an account maintained at the applicable local sub-custodian(s). Orders to purchase Creation Unit Aggregations must be received by the Distributor from an Authorized Participant on its own or the applicable Listing Exchange on the relevant Business Day. However, when a relevant local market is closed due to local market holidays, the local market settlement process will not commence until the end of the local holiday period. Settlement must occur by 2:00 p.m., Eastern time, on the contractual settlement date.

The Authorized Participant must also make available on or before the contractual settlement date, by means satisfactory to the Trust, immediately available or same day funds estimated by the Trust to be sufficient to pay the Cash Component next determined after acceptance of the purchase order, together with the applicable purchase transaction fee. Any excess funds will be returned following settlement of the issue of the Creation Unit.

**Acceptance of Purchase Order.** Subject to the conditions that (i) an irrevocable purchase order has been submitted by the Authorized Participant (either on its own or another investor's behalf) and (ii) arrangements satisfactory to the Trust are in place for payment of the Cash Component and any other cash amounts which may be due, the Trust will accept the order, subject to its right (and the right of the Distributor and NTI) to reject any order until acceptance.

Once the Trust has accepted an order, upon next determination of the NAV of the shares, the Trust will confirm the issuance of a Creation Unit of the Fund, against receipt of payment, at such NAV. The Distributor will then transmit a confirmation of acceptance to the Authorized Participant that placed the order.

The Trust reserves the absolute right to reject or revoke acceptance of a purchase order transmitted to it by the Distributor in respect of a Fund if (a) the purchase order is not in proper form; (b) the purchaser or group of purchasers, upon obtaining the shares ordered, would own 80% or more of the currently outstanding shares of a Fund; (c) the Deposit Securities delivered are not as specified by NTI as described above; (d) acceptance of the Deposit Securities would have certain adverse tax consequences to the Fund; (e) the acceptance of the Portfolio Deposit would, in the opinion of counsel, be unlawful; (f) the acceptance of the Portfolio Deposit would otherwise, in the discretion of the Trust or NTI, have an adverse effect on the Trust or the rights of beneficial owners; or (g) in the event that circumstances outside the control of the Trust, the Distributor, Transfer Agent, Custodian, a sub-custodian or NTI make it for all practical purposes impossible to process purchase orders. Examples of such circumstances include acts of God; public service or utility problems; fires, floods or extreme weather conditions; power outages resulting in telephone, telecopy or computer failures; market conditions or activities causing trading halts; systems failures involving computer or other informational systems affecting the Trust, the Distributor, DTC, NSCC, NTI, Transfer Agent, Custodian, a sub-custodian or any other participant in the creation process; and similar extraordinary events. The Distributor shall notify a prospective creator of a Creation Unit and/or Authorized Participant acting on behalf of such creator of its rejection of the purchase order. The Trust, Transfer Agent, Custodian, any sub-custodian and the Distributor are under no duty, however, to give notification of any defects or irregularities in the delivery of Portfolio Deposits nor shall either of them incur any liability for the failure to give any such notification. The Trust reserves the right, in its sole discretion, to suspend the offering of Shares of the Fund or to reject purchase orders when, in its judgment, such suspension or rejection would be in the best interests of the Trust or the Fund.

**Issuance of a Creation Unit.** Except as provided herein, a Creation Unit of shares of a Fund will not be issued until the transfer of good title to the Trust of the Deposit Securities and the payment of the Cash Component, or transfer of cash, as applicable, have been completed. With respect to any non-U.S. Deposit Securities, when the applicable local sub-custodian(s) have confirmed to the Custodian that the required securities included in the Portfolio Deposit (or the cash value thereof) have been delivered to the account of the applicable local sub-custodian or sub-custodians, the Distributor and the Investment Adviser shall be notified of such delivery, and the Trust will issue, and cause the delivery of the Creation Unit. Creation Units typically are issued on a "T+1" basis (that is one Business Day after trade date) for the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund and on a "T+2" basis (two Business Days after trade date) for the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund. However, as discussed in Appendix A, each Fund reserves the right to settle Creation Unit transactions on a basis other than T+1 or T+2, as applicable, in order to accommodate foreign market holiday schedules, to account for different treatment among foreign and U.S. markets of dividend record dates or ex-dividend dates (the last day the holder of a security can sell the security and still receive dividends payable on the security), and in certain other circumstances.

To the extent contemplated by an Authorized Participant's agreement with the Distributor, the Trust will issue Creation Units to such Authorized Participant notwithstanding the fact that the corresponding Portfolio Deposits have not been received in part or in whole, in reliance on the undertaking of the Authorized Participant to deliver the missing Deposit Securities as soon as possible, which undertaking shall be secured by such Authorized Participant's delivery and maintenance of collateral having a value at least equal to 110%, which NTI may change from time to time, of the value of the missing Deposit Securities. Such cash collateral must be delivered no later than 2:00 p.m., Eastern time, on the contractual settlement date. The only collateral that is acceptable to the Trust is cash in U.S. Dollars. The cash collateral posted by the Authorized Participant may be invested at the risk of the Authorized Participant, and income, if any, on invested cash collateral will be paid to that Authorized Participant. Information concerning the Trust's current procedures for collateralization of missing Deposit Securities is available from the Distributor. The Participant Agreement will permit the Trust to buy the missing Deposit Securities at any time and will subject the Authorized Participant to liability for any shortfall between the cost to the Trust of purchasing such securities and the cash collateral.

In certain cases, Authorized Participants will create and redeem Creation Units on the same trade date. In these instances, the Trust reserves the right to settle these transactions on a net basis. All questions as to the number of shares of each security in the Deposit Securities and the validity, form, eligibility and acceptance for deposit of any securities to be delivered shall be determined by the Trust, and the Trust's determination shall be final and binding.

**Cash Purchase Method.** When cash purchases of Creation Units are specified for a Fund, they will be effected in essentially the same manner as in-kind purchases thereof. The investor must pay the cash equivalent of the designated Deposit Securities it would otherwise be required to provide through an in-kind purchase, plus the same Cash Component required to be paid by an in-kind purchaser. In addition, to offset the Trust's brokerage and other transaction costs associated with using the cash to purchase the requisite Deposit Securities, the investor will be required to pay a fixed purchase transaction fee, plus an additional variable charge for cash purchases, which is expressed as a percentage of the value per Creation Unit. The transaction fees for in-kind and cash purchases of Creation Units are described below.



**Purchase Transaction Fee.** Purchasers of Creation Units are responsible for the costs of transferring the securities constituting the Deposit Securities to the account of the Trust. Investors who use the services of a broker, or other such intermediary, may be charged a fee for such services. A fixed purchase transaction fee payable to the Trust is imposed to compensate the Trust for the transfer and other transaction costs of a Fund associated with the issuance of Creation Units. The standard purchase transaction fee will be the same regardless of the number of Creation Units purchased by the purchaser on the same day. The Authorized Participant may also be required to pay an additional variable charge to compensate the Fund for certain brokerage, tax, foreign exchange, execution, market impact and other costs and expenses related to the execution of trades resulting from cash purchases of Creation Units (up to the maximum amount shown below). Where the Trust permits an in-kind purchaser to substitute cash in lieu of depositing a portion of the Deposit Securities, the purchaser also will be assessed an additional variable transaction charge (up to the maximum amount shown below). To the extent the Fund cannot recoup the amount of transaction costs incurred in connection with a purchase, those transaction costs will be borne by the Fund's shareholders and negatively affect the Fund's performance. The purchase transaction fees for in-kind purchases and cash purchases (when available) are listed in the table below. This table is subject to revision from time to time.:

FUND	Fee for In-Kind and Cash Purchases	Maximum Additional Variable Charge for Cash Purchase*
FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund	\$350	3.00%
FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund	\$ 0	3.00%

\* As a percentage of the net asset value per Creation Unit.

**Redemption of Creation Units.** Shares of a Fund may be redeemed only in Creation Units at their NAV next determined after receipt of a redemption request in proper form by the Fund through the Distributor and only on a Business Day. The Trust will not redeem shares in amounts less than Creation Units. Beneficial owners also may sell shares in the secondary market, but must accumulate enough Fund shares to constitute a Creation Unit in order to have such shares redeemed by the Trust. There can be no assurance, however, that there will be sufficient liquidity in the public trading market at any time to permit assembly of a Creation Unit. Investors should expect to incur brokerage and other costs in connection with assembling a sufficient number of shares to constitute a redeemable Creation Unit.

With respect to each Fund, NTI makes available through the NSCC prior to the opening of business on the Listing Exchange (currently 9:30 a.m., Eastern time) on each Business Day, the portfolio securities or instruments that will be applicable (subject to possible amendment or correction) to redemption requests received in proper form (as defined below) on that day ("Fund Securities"). Unless cash redemptions are specified for a Fund, the redemption proceeds for a Creation Unit generally consist of Fund Securities as announced by NTI through the NSCC on the Business Day of the request for redemption, plus cash in an amount equal to the difference between the NAV of the shares being redeemed, as next determined after a receipt of a request in proper form, and the value of the Fund Securities, less the redemption transaction fee described below ("Cash Redemption Amount"). The redemption transaction fee described below is deducted from such redemption proceeds. In the event that the Fund Securities have a value greater than the NAV of the Fund shares, a compensating cash payment equal to such difference is required to be made by or through an Authorized Participant by the redeeming shareholder.

On a given Business Day, the Trust may require all Authorized Participants redeeming Creation Units on that day to receive an amount of cash (that is a "cash in lieu" amount) to replace any Fund Security that may not be eligible for transfer through the systems of DTC or the Clearing Process (discussed above) or, in the case of a non-U.S. Fund Security, the security or instrument is not eligible for trading due to local trading restrictions, local restrictions on securities transfers or other similar circumstances. The Trust also reserves the right to permit a "cash in lieu" to replace any Fund Security which may not be eligible for trading by an Authorized Participant or the investor on whose behalf the Authorized Participant is acting or if a shareholder would be subject to unfavorable income tax treatment if the shareholder received redemption proceeds in kind. On a given Business Day, the Trust may announce before the open of trading that all redemptions of Creation Units of a Fund on that day will be made entirely in cash or, upon receiving a redemption order for Creation Units of the Fund from an Authorized Participant, the Trust may determine to require that redemption to be made entirely in cash.

When cash redemptions of Creation Units are specified for a Fund, they will be effected in essentially the same manner as in-kind redemptions thereof. The investor will receive the cash equivalent of the designated Fund Securities it would otherwise have received through an in-kind redemption, plus the same Cash Redemption Amount required to be paid to an in-kind redeemer. In addition, to offset the Trust's brokerage and other transaction costs associated with a cash redemption, the investor will be required to pay a fixed redemption transaction fee, plus an additional variable charge for cash redemptions, which is expressed as a percentage of the value per Creation Unit. The transaction fees for in-kind and cash redemptions of Creation Units are described below.

Investors will bear the costs of transferring the Fund Securities from the Trust to their account on the order. Investors who use the services of a broker or other such intermediary may be charged a fee for such services. A fixed redemption transaction fee payable to the Trust is imposed to offset transfer and other transaction costs that may be incurred by the relevant Fund. The standard redemption transaction fee will be the same regardless of the number of Creation Units redeemed by an investor on the same day. The Authorized Participant may also be required to pay a variable transaction fee to compensate the Fund for certain brokerage, tax, foreign exchange, execution, market impact and other costs and expenses related to the execution of trades resulting from cash redemptions of Creation Units (up to the maximum amount shown below). Where the Trust requires or permits an in-kind redeemer to substitute cash in lieu of receiving a portion of the Deposit Securities, the redeemer also will be assessed an additional variable transaction charge (up to the maximum amount shown below). To the extent the Fund cannot recoup the amount of transaction costs incurred in connection with a redemption, those transaction costs will be borne by the Fund's remaining shareholders and negatively affect the Fund's performance. The redemption transaction fee for redemptions in kind and for cash and the additional variable charge for cash redemptions (when cash redemptions are available or specified) are listed in the table below.

FUND	Fee for In-Kind and Cash Redemptions	Maximum Additional Variable Charge for Cash Redemption*
FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund	\$350	2.00%
FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund	\$ 0	2.00%

\* As a percentage of the net asset value per Creation Unit, inclusive of the standard transaction fee.

**Placement of Redemption Orders For The Funds.** Orders to redeem Creation Units of a Fund must be delivered through a DTC Participant that has executed the Participant Agreement. A DTC Participant who wishes to place an order for redemption of Creation Units to be effected outside the Clearing Process does not need to be a Participating Party, but such orders must state that the DTC Participant is not using the Clearing Process and that redemption of Creation Units will instead be effected through transfer of shares directly through DTC. An order in good form to redeem Creation Units outside the Clearing Process is deemed received by the Trust on the Transmittal Date if: (i) such order is received by the Transfer Agent not later than the Closing Time on such Transmittal Date; (ii) such order is accompanied or followed by the requisite number of shares of the Fund specified in such order, which delivery must be made through DTC to the Transfer Agent no later than 10:00 a.m., Eastern Time, on the contracted settlement date; and (iii) all other procedures set forth in the Participant Agreement are properly followed. After the Trust has deemed an order for redemption outside the Clearing Process received, the Trust will initiate procedures to transfer the requisite Fund Securities, which are generally expected to be delivered within two Business Days and the Cash Redemption Amount to the Authorized Participant on behalf of the redeeming Beneficial Owner by the Settlement Date. Due to the schedule of holidays in certain countries, however, the delivery of in-kind redemption proceeds for a Fund may take longer than two Business Days after the Transmittal Date. In such cases, the local market settlement procedures will not commence until the end of local holiday periods. See Appendix A for a list of local holidays in the non-U.S. countries relevant to the Funds. In certain cases Authorized Participants will redeem and create Creation Units of the same Fund on the same trade date. In these instances, the Trust reserves the right to settle these transactions on a net basis.

Investors should be aware that their particular broker may not have executed a Participant Agreement, and that, therefore, requests to redeem Creation Units may have to be placed by the investor's broker through an Authorized Participant who has executed a Participant Agreement. At any given time there will be only a limited number of broker-dealers that have executed an Authorized Participant Agreement. Investors making a redemption request should be aware that such request must be in the form specified by such Authorized Participant. Investors making a request to redeem Creation Units should allow sufficient time to permit proper submission of the request by an Authorized Participant and transfer of the shares to the Trust's Transfer Agent; such investors should allow for the additional time that may be required to effect redemptions through their banks, brokers or other financial intermediaries if such intermediaries are not Authorized Participants.

In connection with taking delivery of shares of non-U.S. Fund Securities upon redemption of shares of the Fund, a redeeming Beneficial Owner or Authorized Participant acting on behalf of such Beneficial Owner must maintain appropriate security arrangements with a qualified broker-dealer, bank or other custody providers in each jurisdiction in which any of the portfolio securities are customarily traded, to which account such portfolio securities will be delivered.

To the extent permitted by an Authorized Participant's agreement with the Distributor, in the event the Authorized Participant has submitted a Redemption Order in proper form but is unable to transfer the Fund Shares to the Custodian at or prior to 10:00 a.m., Eastern Time, on the next Business Day following the Transmittal Date, the Fund at its discretion may, in reliance on the undertaking by the Participant to deliver the missing Fund Shares as soon as possible, allow the Participant to provide and maintain collateral to secure the Participant's obligation to deliver Fund Shares. The collateral provided must be in US Dollars, with an initial value at least equal to 110% of the value of the entire Redemption Order (marked-to-market daily). The collateral

percentage required may change from time to time. Such cash collateral must be requested no later than 10:00 a.m. Eastern Time, and delivered no later than 2:00 p.m., Eastern Time, on the Listing Exchange business day after the date of submission of such redemption request. The Participant Agreement may permit the Fund to purchase the missing shares or acquire the portfolio securities and the Cash Component underlying such shares at any time— such purchase may subject the Authorized Participant to liability for any shortfall between the cost to the Trust of purchasing such shares, portfolio securities or Cash Component and the value of the cash collateral. The Fund will only return the collateral provided by the Participant once the Fund verifies that all Fund Shares for the corresponding Redemption Order have settled at the Trust’s Custodian. The Trust’s current procedures require, among other things, that any cash collateral shall be in the form of U.S. dollars in immediately available funds and shall be held by the Trust’s Custodian and marked to market daily, and that the fees of the Custodian and any sub-custodians in respect of the delivery, maintenance and redelivery of the cash collateral shall be payable by the Authorized Participant. The cash collateral posted by the Authorized Participant may be invested at the risk of the Authorized Participant, and income, if any, on invested cash collateral will be paid to that Authorized Participant.

The calculation of the value of the Fund Securities and the Cash Redemption Amount to be delivered upon redemption will be made by the Trust according to the procedures set forth under “Determination of Net Asset Value” in the Funds’ Prospectus and “Net Asset Value” below computed on the Business Day on which a redemption order is deemed received in good form by the Trust. Therefore, if a redemption order in proper form is submitted to the Transfer Agent by a DTC Participant not later than Closing Time on the Transmittal Date, and the requisite number of shares of the relevant Fund are delivered to Transfer Agent prior to the DTC Cut-Off-Time, then the value of the Fund Securities and the Cash Redemption Amount to be delivered will be determined by Trust on such Transmittal Date. If, however, a redemption order is submitted to the Transfer Agent by a DTC Participant not later than the Closing Time on the Transmittal Date but either (i) the requisite number of shares of the relevant Fund are not delivered by the DTC Cut-Off-Time, as described above, on such Transmittal Date, or (ii) the redemption order is not submitted in proper form, then the redemption order will not be deemed received as of the Transmittal Date. In such case, the value of the Fund Securities and the Cash Redemption Amount to be delivered will be computed on the Business Day that such order is deemed received by the Trust, (i.e., the Business Day on which the shares of the relevant Fund are delivered through DTC to the Transfer Agent by the DTC Cut-Off-Time) on such Business Day pursuant to a properly submitted redemption order.

Because the portfolio securities of a Fund may trade on the relevant exchange(s) on days that the Listing Exchange is closed or are otherwise not Business Days for the Fund, shareholders may not be able to redeem their shares of the Fund, or to purchase or sell shares of the Fund on the Listing Exchange, on days when the NAV of the Fund could be significantly affected by events in the relevant foreign markets.

The right of redemption may be suspended or the date of payment postponed with respect to any Fund (1) for any period during which the New York Stock Exchange is closed (other than customary weekend and holiday closings); (2) for any period during which trading on the New York Stock Exchange is suspended or restricted; (3) for any period during which an emergency exists as a result of which disposal of the shares of the Fund’s portfolio securities or determination of its NAV is not reasonably practicable; or (4) in such other circumstance as is permitted by the SEC.

## **TAXES**

The following summarizes certain additional tax considerations generally affecting the Funds and its shareholders that are not described in the Prospectus. No attempt is made to present a detailed explanation of the tax treatment of the Funds or its shareholders, and the discussions here and in the Prospectus are not intended as a substitute for careful tax planning. Potential investors should consult their tax advisers with specific reference to their own tax situations.

The discussions of the federal tax consequences in the Prospectus and this SAI are based on the Code and the regulations issued under it, and court decisions and administrative interpretations, as in effect on the date of this SAI. Future legislative or administrative changes or court decisions may significantly alter the statements included herein, and any such changes or decisions may be retroactive.

## **FEDERAL - GENERAL INFORMATION**

Each Fund intends to qualify as a regulated investment company under Subchapter M of Subtitle A, Chapter 1, of the Code. As a regulated investment company, each Fund generally will be exempt from federal income tax on its net investment income and realized capital gains that it distributes to shareholders. To qualify for treatment as a regulated investment company, it must meet three important tests each year.

First, each Fund must derive with respect to each taxable year at least 90% of its gross income from dividends, interest, certain payments with respect to securities loans, gains from the sale or other disposition of stock or securities or foreign currencies, other income derived with respect to the Fund’s business of investing in stock, securities or currencies, or net income derived from interests in qualified publicly traded partnerships.

Second, generally, at the close of each quarter of the Fund's taxable year, at least 50% of the value of each Fund's assets must consist of cash and cash items, U.S. government securities, securities of other regulated investment companies, and securities of other issuers as to which (a) the Fund has not invested more than 5% of the value of its total assets in securities of the issuer and (b) the Fund does not hold more than 10% of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer, and no more than 25% of the value of each Fund's total assets may be invested in the securities of (1) any one issuer (other than U.S. government securities and securities of other regulated investment companies), (2) two or more issuers that the Fund controls and which are engaged in the same or similar trades or businesses or (3) one or more qualified publicly traded partnerships.

Third, each Fund must distribute an amount equal to at least the sum of 90% of its investment company taxable income (net investment income and the excess of net short-term capital gain over net long-term capital loss), before taking into account any deduction for dividends paid, and 90% of its tax-exempt income, if any, for the year.

Each Fund intends to comply with these requirements. If a Fund were to fail to make sufficient distributions, it could be liable for corporate income tax and for excise tax in respect of the shortfall or, if the shortfall is large enough, the Fund could be disqualified as a regulated investment company. If for any taxable year a Fund were not to qualify as a regulated investment company, all its taxable income would be subject to tax at regular corporate rates without any deduction for distributions to shareholders. In that event, taxable shareholders would recognize dividend income on distributions (including distributions attributable to tax-exempt income) to the extent of the Fund's current and accumulated earnings and profits, and corporate shareholders could be eligible for the dividends-received deduction.

The Code imposes a nondeductible 4% excise tax on regulated investment companies that fail to currently distribute an amount equal to specified percentages of their ordinary taxable income and capital gain net income (excess of capital gains over capital losses) by the end of each calendar year. Each Fund intends to make sufficient distributions or deemed distributions of its ordinary taxable income and capital gain net income each calendar year to avoid liability for this excise tax.

Each Fund intends to distribute annually to its shareholders substantially all of its investment company taxable income, and any net realized long-term capital gains in excess of net realized short-term capital losses (including any capital loss carryovers. However, if a Fund retains for investment an amount equal to all or a portion of its net long-term capital gains in excess of its net short-term capital losses (including any capital loss carryovers), it will be subject to a corporate tax (currently at a maximum rate of 21%) on the amount retained. In that event, such Fund may designate such retained amounts as undistributed capital gains in a notice to its shareholders who, in such case, (a) will be required to include in income for U.S. federal income tax purposes, as long-term capital gains, their proportionate shares of the undistributed amount, (b) will be entitled to credit their proportionate shares of the tax paid by such Fund on the undistributed amount against their U.S. federal income tax liabilities, if any, and to claim refunds to the extent their credits exceed their liabilities, if any, and (c) will be entitled to increase their tax basis, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, in their shares by an amount equal to the amount of undistributed capital gains included in the shareholder's income reduced by their proportionate share of the taxes paid. Organizations or persons not subject to U.S. federal income tax on such capital gains will be entitled to a refund of their pro rata share of such taxes paid by such Fund upon filing appropriate returns or claims for refund with the Internal Revenue Service.

Distributions of net realized long-term capital gains, if any, that a Fund designates as capital gains dividends are taxable as long-term capital gains, regardless of how long a shareholder has held shares of such Fund. All other dividends of a Fund (including dividends from short-term capital gains) from its current and accumulated earnings and profits ("regular dividends") are generally subject to tax as ordinary income.

If an individual trust or estate receives a qualified dividend qualifying for the long-term capital gains rates and such dividend constitutes an "extraordinary dividend," and the individual subsequently recognizes a loss on the sale or exchange of stock in respect of which the extraordinary dividend was paid, then the loss will be long-term capital loss to the extent of such extraordinary dividend. An "extraordinary dividend" on common stock for this purpose is generally a dividend (i) in an amount greater than or equal to 10% of the taxpayer's tax basis (or trading value) in a share of stock, aggregating dividends with ex-dividend dates within an 85-day period or (ii) in an amount greater than 20% of the taxpayer's tax basis (or trading value) in a share of stock, aggregating dividends with ex-dividend dates within a 365-day period.

Distributions in excess of a Fund's current and accumulated earnings and profits will, as to each shareholder, be treated as a tax-free return of capital to the extent of a shareholder's basis in his shares of such Fund, and as a capital gain thereafter (if the shareholder holds his shares of such Fund as capital assets). Shareholders receiving dividends or distributions in the form of additional shares should be treated for U.S. federal income tax purposes as receiving a distribution in an amount equal to the amount of money that the shareholders receiving cash dividends or distributions will receive, and should have a cost basis in the shares received equal to such amount.

Investors considering buying shares just prior to a dividend or capital gain distribution should be aware that, although the price of shares just purchased at that time may reflect the amount of the forthcoming distribution, such dividend or distribution may nevertheless be taxable to them. If a Fund is the holder of record of any stock on the record date for any dividends payable with respect to such stock, such dividends will be included in such Fund's gross income not as of the date received but as of the later of (a) the date such stock became ex-dividend with respect to such dividends (that is, the date on which a buyer of the stock would not be entitled to receive the declared, but unpaid, dividends) or (b) the date such Fund acquired such stock. Accordingly, in order to satisfy its income distribution requirements, a Fund may be required to pay dividends based on anticipated earnings, and shareholders may receive dividends in an earlier year than would otherwise be the case.

## BACK-UP WITHHOLDING

In certain cases, if a shareholder: (1) has failed to provide a correct taxpayer identification number; (2) is subject to backup withholding by the Internal Revenue Service; (3) has failed to certify that such shareholder is not subject to backup withholding; or (4) has not certified that such shareholder is a U.S. person (including a U.S. resident alien), 24% of the dividends and distributions payable to such shareholder will be withheld and remitted to the U.S. Treasury.

## SECTIONS 351 AND 362

The Trust on behalf of each Fund has the right to reject an order for a purchase of shares of a Fund if the purchaser (or group of purchasers) would, upon obtaining the shares so ordered, own 80% or more of the outstanding shares of a given Fund and if, pursuant to Sections 351 and 362 of the Code, that Fund would have a basis in the securities different from the market value of such securities on the date of deposit. If a Fund's basis in such securities on the date of deposit was less than market value on such date, such Fund, upon disposition of the securities, would recognize more taxable gain or less taxable loss than if its basis in the securities had been equal to market value. It is not anticipated that the Trust will exercise the right of rejection except in a case where the Trust determines that accepting the order could result in material adverse tax consequences to a Fund or its shareholders. The Trust also has the right to require information necessary to determine beneficial share ownership for purposes of the 80% determination.

## NET CAPITAL LOSS CARRYFORWARDS

A Fund is permitted to carry forward unused capital losses for an unlimited period. Capital loss carry forwards will retain their character as either short-term or long-term capital losses. As of October 31, 2017, the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund and FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund had available post-enactment capital loss carry forwards as set forth below:

<u>Fund</u>	<u>Short-Term</u>	<u>Long-Term</u>	<u>Total</u>
FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund	\$2,264	—	\$2,264
FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund	\$5,646	\$505	\$6,151

## EXCESS INCLUSION INCOME

Certain types of income received by a Fund from real estate investment Trusts ("REITs"), REMICs, taxable mortgage pools or other investments may cause a Fund to designate some or all of its distributions as "excess inclusion income." To Fund shareholders such excess inclusion income may: (1) constitute taxable income, as "unrelated business taxable income" ("UBTI") for those shareholders who would otherwise be tax-exempt such as individual retirement accounts, 401(k) accounts, Keogh plans, pension plans and certain charitable entities; (2) as UBTI cause a charitable remainder Trust to be subject to a 100% excise tax on its UBTI; (3) not be offset against net operating losses for tax purposes; (4) not be eligible for reduced U.S. withholding for non-U.S. shareholders even from tax treaty countries; and (5) cause a Fund to be subject to tax if certain "disqualified organizations" as defined by the Code are Fund shareholders.

## TAXATION OF INCOME FROM CERTAIN FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS

The tax principles applicable to transactions in variable rate debt instruments, financial instruments and futures contracts and options that may be engaged in by a Fund including the effect of fluctuations in the value of foreign currencies, are complex and, in some cases, uncertain. Such transactions and investments may cause a Fund to recognize taxable income prior to the receipt of cash, thereby requiring such Fund to liquidate other positions, or to borrow money, so as to make sufficient distributions to shareholders to avoid corporate-level tax. Moreover, some or all of the taxable income recognized may be ordinary income or short-term capital gain, so that the distributions may be taxable to shareholders as ordinary income.

## **SALES OF SHARES**

Upon the sale or exchange of his shares, a shareholder will realize a taxable gain or loss equal to the difference between the amount realized and his basis in his shares. A redemption of shares by a Fund will be treated as a sale for this purpose. Except as provided below, such gain or loss will be treated as capital gain or loss if the shares are capital assets in the shareholder's hands, and will be long-term capital gain or loss if the shares are held for more than one year and short-term capital gain or loss if the shares are held for one year or less. Any loss realized on a sale or exchange will be disallowed to the extent the shares disposed of are replaced, including replacement through the reinvesting of dividends and capital gains distributions in a Fund, within a 61-day period beginning 30 days before and ending 30 days after the disposition of the shares. In such a case, the basis of the shares acquired will be increased to reflect the disallowed loss. Any loss realized by a shareholder on the sale of a Fund share held by the shareholder for six months or less will be treated for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a long-term capital loss to the extent of any distributions or deemed distributions of long-term capital gains received by the shareholder with respect to such share.

## **OTHER TAXES**

Dividends, distributions and redemption proceeds may also be subject to additional state, local and foreign taxes depending on each shareholder's particular situation.

## **TAXATION OF NON-U.S. SHAREHOLDERS**

Dividends paid by a Fund to non-U.S. shareholders are generally subject to withholding tax at a 30% rate or a reduced rate specified by an applicable income tax treaty to the extent derived from investment income and short-term capital gains. In order to obtain a reduced rate of withholding, a non-U.S. shareholder will be required to provide an IRS Form W-8BEN or W-8BEN-E, as applicable, certifying its entitlement to benefits under a treaty. Certain interest related dividends and short term capital gain dividends as designated by the Fund are not subject to this 30% withholding tax if the shareholder provides a properly completed Form W-8BEN or W-8BEN-E, as applicable. The withholding tax does not apply to regular dividends paid to a non-U.S. shareholder who provides a Form W-8ECI, certifying that the dividends are effectively connected with the non-U.S. shareholder's conduct of a trade or business within the United States. Instead, the effectively connected dividends will be subject to regular U.S. income tax as if the non-U.S. shareholder were a U.S. shareholder. A non-U.S. corporation receiving effectively connected dividends may also be subject to additional "branch profits tax" imposed at a rate of 30% (or lower treaty rate). A non-U.S. shareholder who fails to provide an IRS Form W-8BEN, W-8BEN-E or other applicable form may be subject to backup withholding at the appropriate rate.

In general, United States federal withholding tax will not apply to any gain or income realized by a non-U.S. shareholder in respect of any distributions of net long-term capital gains over net short-term capital losses, exempt-interest dividends, or upon the sale or other disposition of shares of a Fund.

Ordinary dividends, redemption payments and certain capital gain dividends to a non-U.S. shareholder that fails to make certain required certifications, or that is a "foreign financial institution" as defined in Section 1471 of the Code and that does not meet the requirements imposed on foreign financial institutions by Section 1471, are generally subject to a U.S. withholding tax at a 30% rate. Withholding on redemption payments and certain capital gain dividends is currently scheduled to begin after December 31, 2018. The extent, if any, to which such withholding tax may be reduced or eliminated by an applicable tax treaty is unclear. A non-U.S. shareholder may be exempt from the withholding described in this paragraph under an intergovernmental agreement between the U.S. and a foreign government, provided that the shareholder and the applicable foreign government comply with the terms of such agreement.

## **REPORTING**

If a shareholder recognizes a loss with respect to a Fund's shares of \$2 million or more for an individual shareholder or \$10 million or more for a corporate shareholder, the shareholder may be required to file with the Internal Revenue Service a disclosure statement on Form 8886. Direct shareholders of portfolio securities are in many cases exempted from this reporting requirement, but under current guidance, shareholders of a regulated investment company are not exempted. The fact that a loss is reportable under these regulations does not affect the legal determination of whether the taxpayer's treatment of the loss is proper. Shareholders should consult their tax advisors to determine the applicability of these regulations in light of their individual circumstances. Certain tax-exempt entities and their managers may be subject to excise tax if they are parties to certain reportable transactions.

The foregoing discussion is a summary only and is not intended as a substitute for careful tax planning. Purchasers of shares should consult their own tax advisers as to the tax consequences of investing in such shares, including under state, local and foreign tax laws. Finally, the foregoing discussion is based on applicable provisions of the Code, regulations, judicial authority and administrative interpretations in effect on the date of this Statement of Additional Information. Changes in applicable authority

could materially affect the conclusions discussed above, and such changes often occur.

### **NET ASSET VALUE**

Net asset value is determined as indicated under “Determination of Net Asset Value” in the Funds’ Prospectus.

The time at which transactions and shares are priced and the time by which orders must be received may be changed in case of an emergency or if regular trading on the New York Stock Exchange is stopped at a time other than 4:00 p.m. Eastern Standard Time. On any business day when the Securities Industry and Financial Markets Association (“SIFMA”) recommends that the bond markets close early, each Fund reserves the right to close at or prior to the SIFMA recommended closing time and credit will be given on the next business day. The Trust reserves the right to advance the time by which purchase and redemption orders must be received for same business day credit as otherwise permitted by the SEC. In addition, each Fund may compute its NAV as of any time permitted pursuant to any exemption, order or statement of the SEC or its staff. The Trust reserves the right to reprocess purchase and redemption transactions that were processed at a NAV other than the Fund’s official closing NAV. For instance, if a pricing error is discovered that impacts a Fund’s NAV, the corrected NAV would be the official closing NAV and the erroneous NAV would be a NAV other than the Fund’s official closing NAV. Those transactions that were processed using the erroneous NAV may then be reprocessed using the official closing NAV.

### **DIVIDENDS AND DISTRIBUTIONS**

#### **GENERAL POLICIES**

Dividends from net investment income, including any net foreign currency gains, are generally declared and paid monthly and any net realized securities gains, if any, generally are distributed at least annually. In order to comply with the distribution requirements of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, dividends may be declared and paid more frequently for the Fund. Dividends and securities gains distributions are distributed in U.S. dollars and cannot be automatically reinvested in additional shares of the Funds. The Trust reserves the right to declare special distributions if, in its reasonable discretion, such action is necessary or advisable to preserve the status of the Fund as a RIC or to avoid imposition of income or excise taxes on undistributed income.

Dividends and other distributions on Fund Shares are distributed, as described below, on a pro rata basis to Beneficial Owners of such Shares. Dividend payments are made through DTC Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners then of record with proceeds received from the Fund.

#### **DIVIDEND REINVESTMENT SERVICE**

No dividend reinvestment service is provided by the Trust. Broker-dealers may make available the DTC book-entry Dividend Reinvestment Service for use by Beneficial Owners of Funds for reinvestment of their dividend distributions. Beneficial Owners should contact their broker to determine the availability and costs of the service and the details of participation therein. Brokers may require Beneficial Owners to adhere to specific procedures and timetables. If this service is available and used, dividend distributions of both income and realized gains will be automatically reinvested in additional whole shares of the same Fund purchased in the secondary market.

### **OTHER INFORMATION**

#### **COUNSEL**

Drinker Biddle & Reath LLP, with offices at One Logan Square, Ste. 2000, Philadelphia, PA 19103-6996, is counsel to the Trust.

#### **INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

Deloitte & Touche LLP, located at 111 South Wacker Drive, Chicago, Illinois 60606-4301, serves as the independent registered public accounting firm of the Trust, audits the Funds’ financial statements and may perform other services.

#### **ADDITIONAL INFORMATION**

Each Fund intends to comply with the regulations of the Commodities Futures Trading Commission exempting it from registration as a “Commodity Pool Operator.” Each Fund is operated by persons who have claimed an exclusion from the definition of the term “Commodity Pool Operator” with respect to a Fund under the Commodity Exchange Act and, therefore are not subject to registration or regulations as a pool operator with respect to the Fund under such Act.

The Prospectus and this SAI do not contain all the information included in the Registration Statement filed with the SEC under the Securities Act with respect to the securities offered by the Trust's Prospectus. Certain portions of the Registration Statement have been omitted from the Prospectus and this SAI pursuant to the rules and regulations of the SEC. The Registration Statement, including the exhibits filed therewith, may be examined at the office of the SEC in Washington, D.C.

Statements contained in the Prospectus or in this SAI as to the contents of any contract or other documents referred to are not necessarily complete, and in each instance reference is made to the copy of such contract or other document filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement of which the Prospectus and this SAI form a part, each such statement being qualified in all respects by such reference.

## **FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

The audited financial statements of the FlexShares Ready Access Variable Income Fund and the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund and related report of Deloitte & Touche LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, contained in the annual report to the Funds' shareholders for the fiscal year ended October 31, 2017 (the "Annual Report") are hereby incorporated by reference herein. No other parts of the Annual Report are incorporated by reference herein. Copies of the Trust's Annual Report may be obtained upon request and without charge, by writing to FlexShares ETFs, c/o Foreside Fund Services, LLC, Three Canal Plaza, Suite 100, Portland, ME 04101 or by calling 1-855-FLEXETF (1-855-353-9383).



## APPENDIX A

Each Fund generally intends to effect deliveries of Creation Units and portfolio securities on a basis of “T” plus one and “T” plus two business days, as applicable. Each Fund may effect deliveries of Creation Units and portfolio securities on a basis other than T plus one or T plus two, respectively, in order to accommodate local holiday schedules, to account for different treatment among foreign and U.S. markets of dividend record dates and ex-dividend dates, or under certain other circumstances. The ability of the Trust to effect in-kind creations and redemptions within two business days of receipt of an order in good form is subject, among other things, to the condition that, within the time period from the date of the order to the date of delivery of the securities, there are no days that are holidays in the applicable foreign market. For every occurrence of one or more intervening holidays in the applicable foreign market that are not holidays observed in the U.S. equity market, the redemption settlement cycle may be extended by the number of such intervening holidays. In addition to holidays, other unforeseeable closings in a foreign market due to emergencies may also prevent the Trust from delivering securities within the normal settlement period.

The securities delivery cycles currently practicable for transferring portfolio securities to redeeming investors, coupled with foreign market holiday schedules, may require a delivery process longer than seven calendar days for the Fund in certain circumstances. The holidays applicable to each Fund through December 31, 2019 are listed below, as are instances where more than seven days may be needed to deliver redemption proceeds. Although certain holidays may occur on different dates in subsequent years, the number of days required to deliver redemption proceeds in any given year is not expected to exceed the maximum number of days listed below for the Funds. The proclamation of new holidays, the treatment by market participants of certain days as “informal holidays” (e.g., days on which no or limited securities transactions occur, as a result of substantially shortened trading hours), the elimination of existing holidays, or changes in local securities delivery practices, could affect the information set forth herein at some time in the future.

### Regular Holidays through December 31, 2018.

#### Australia

January 1, 2018	April 25, 2018	December 25, 2018
January 26, 2018	June 11, 2018	December 26, 2018
March 30, 2018	August 6, 2018	January 1, 2019
April 2, 2018	October 1, 2018	

#### Austria

January 1, 2018	May 10, 2018	October 26, 2018	December 26, 2018
March 30, 2018	May 21, 2018	November 1, 2018	December 31, 2018
April 2, 2018	May 31, 2018	December 24, 2018	January 1, 2019
May 1, 2018	August 15, 2018	December 25, 2018	

#### Belgium

January 1, 2018	May 10, 2018	December 25, 2018
March 30, 2018	May 21, 2018	December 26, 2018
April 2, 2018	August 15, 2018	January 1, 2019
May 1, 2018	November 1, 2018	

#### Brazil

January 1, 2018	May 1, 2018	November 2, 2018	December 31, 2018
January 25, 2018	May 31, 2018	November 15, 2018	January 1, 2019

February 12, 2018	July 9, 2018	November 20, 2018
February 13, 2018	September 7, 2018	December 24, 2018
March 30, 2018	October 12, 2018	December 25, 2018

**Britain**

January 1, 2018	May 1, 2018	June 18, 2018	December 24, 2018
January 2, 2018	May 7, 2018	June 22, 2018	December 25, 2018
January 15, 2018	May 9, 2018	July 2, 2018	December 26, 2018
January 22, 2018	May 10, 2018	July 4, 2018	December 27, 2018
February 14, 2018	May 11, 2018	August 27, 2018	December 28, 2018
February 19, 2018	May 17, 2018	September 3, 2018	December 31, 2018
March 29, 2018	May 21, 2018	October 8, 2018	January 1, 2019
March 30, 2018	May 28, 2018	November 12, 2018	January 2, 2019
April 2, 2018	June 5, 2018	November 22, 2018	
April 27, 2018	June 6, 2018	December 6, 2018	

**Canada**

January 1, 2018	May 21, 2018	September 3, 2018	December 25, 2018
February 19, 2018	July 2, 2018	October 8, 2018	December 26, 2018
March 30, 2018	August 6, 2018	November 12, 2018	January 1, 2019

**Chile**

January 1, 2018	July 16, 2018	October 15, 2018	January 1, 2019
March 30, 2018	August 15, 2018	November 1, 2018	
May 1, 2018	September 17, 2018	November 2, 2018	
May 21, 2018	September 18, 2018	December 25, 2018	
July 2, 2018	September 19, 2018	December 31, 2018	

**China**

January 1, 2018	April 5, 2018	September 25, 2018	December 26, 2018
February 15, 2018	April 6, 2018	October 1, 2018	January 1, 2019
February 16, 2018	April 30, 2018	October 2, 2018	
February 19, 2018	May 1, 2018	October 3, 2018	
February 20, 2018	May 22, 2018	October 4, 2018	
February 21, 2018	June 18, 2018	October 5, 2018	
March 30, 2018	July 2, 2018	October 17, 2018	

April 2, 2018                      September 24, 2018                      December 25, 2018

**Colombia**

January 1, 2018	May 14, 2018	August 20, 2018	January 1, 2019
January 8, 2018	June 4, 2018	October 15, 2018	
March 19, 2018	June 11, 2018	November 5, 2018	
March 29, 2018	July 2, 2018	November 12, 2018	
March 30, 2018	July 20, 2018	December 25, 2018	
May 1, 2018	August 7, 2018	December 31, 2018	

**The Czech Republic**

January 1, 2018	May 8, 2018	December 24, 2018	
March 30, 2018	July 5, 2018	December 25, 2018	
April 2, 2018	July 6, 2018	December 26, 2018	
May 1, 2018	September 28, 2018	January 1, 2019	

**Denmark**

January 1, 2018	April 27, 2018	June 5, 2018	December 31, 2018
March 29, 2018	May 10, 2018	December 24, 2018	January 1, 2019
March 30, 2018	May 11, 2018	December 25, 2018	
April 2, 2018	May 21, 2018	December 26, 2018	

**Egypt**

January 7, 2018	April 25, 2018	August 21, 2018	November 20, 2018
January 25, 2018	May 1, 2018	August 22, 2018	
April 8, 2018	July 1, 2018	August 23, 2018	
April 9, 2018	July 23, 2017	September 11, 2018	

The Egyptian market is closed every Friday.

**Finland**

January 1, 2018	May 1, 2018	December 6, 2018	December 26, 2018
March 30, 2018	May 10, 2018	December 24, 2018	January 1, 2019
April 2, 2018	June 22, 2018	December 25, 2018	

**France**

January 1, 2018	May 1, 2018	August 27, 2018	January 1, 2019
March 30, 2018	May 7, 2018	December 25, 2018	
April 2, 2018	May 28, 2018	December 26, 2018	

**Germany**

January 1, 2018	May 1, 2018	October 3, 2018	January 1, 2019
February 12, 2018	May 10, 2018	November 1, 2018	
March 30, 2018	May 21, 2018	December 25, 2018	
April 2, 2018	May 31, 2018	December 26, 2018	

**Greece**

January 1, 2018	April 6, 2018	August 15, 2018	
February 12, 2018	April 9, 2018	December 24, 2018	
February 19, 2018	May 1, 2018	December 25, 2018	
March 30, 2018	May 21, 2018	December 26, 2018	
April 2, 2018	May 28, 2018	January 1, 2019	

**Hong Kong**

January 1, 2018	April 2, 2018	July 2, 2018	October 5, 2018
February 15, 2018	April 5, 2018	September 24, 2018	October 17, 2018
February 16, 2018	April 6, 2018	September 25, 2018	December 24, 2018
February 19, 2018	April 30, 2018	October 1, 2018	December 25, 2018
February 20, 2018	May 1, 2018	October 2, 2018	December 26, 2018
February 21, 2018	May 22, 2018	October 3, 2018	December 31, 2018
March 30, 2018	June 18, 2018	October 4, 2018	January 1, 2019

**Hungary**

January 1, 2018	April 30, 2018	October 23, 2018	December 26, 2018
March 15, 2018	May 1, 2018	November 1, 2018	December 31, 2018
March 16, 2018	May 21, 2018	November 2, 2018	January 1, 2019
March 30, 2018	August 20, 2018		December 24, 2018
April 2, 2018	October 22, 2018		December 25, 2018

**India**

January 26, 2018	April 2, 2018	August 22, 2018	November 9, 2018
February 13, 2018	April 14, 2018	September 12, 2018	November 20, 2018
February 19, 2018	May 1, 2018	September 20, 2018	November 21, 2018
March 1, 2018	May 29, 2018	October 2, 2018	November 22, 2018
March 29, 2018	June 15, 2018	October 18, 2018	December 25, 2018
March 30, 2018	August 15, 2018		November 8, 2018

**Indonesia**

January 1, 2018	May 10, 2018	August 17, 2018	December 25, 2018
February 16, 2018	May 30, 2018	August 22, 2018	December 31, 2018
March 30, 2018	June 1, 2018	September 12, 2018	January 1, 2019
May 1, 2018	June 15, 2018	November 21, 2018	

**Ireland**

January 1, 2018	May 28, 2018	August 27, 2018	January 1, 2019
March 30, 2018	June 4, 2018	October 29, 2018	
April 2, 2018	July 12, 2018	December 25, 2018	
May 7, 2018	August 6, 2018	December 26, 2018	

**Israel**

March 1, 2018	April 25, 2018	June 8, 2018	September 19, 2018
March 21, 2018	April 26, 2018	July 22, 2018	September 24, 2018
April 6, 2018	May 9, 2018	September 10, 2018	October 1, 2018
April 19, 2018	May 10, 2018	September 11, 2018	October 8, 2018
April 20, 2018	May 20, 2018	September 18, 2018	October 9, 2018

The Israeli market is closed every Friday.

**Italy**

January 1, 2018	April 2, 2018	December 25, 2018	January 1, 2019
March 30, 2018	May 1, 2018	December 26, 2018	

**Japan**

January 1, 2018	March 21, 2018	September 17, 2018	December 31, 2018
January 2, 2018	April 30, 2018	September 24, 2018	January 1, 2019
January 3, 2018	May 3, 2018	October 8, 2018	January 2, 2019
January 8, 2018	May 4, 2018	November 23, 2018	January 3, 2019
February 12, 2018	July 16, 2018	December 24, 2018	

**Malaysia**

January 1, 2018	May 29, 2018	August 22, 2018	November 20, 2018
January 31, 2018	May 30, 2018	August 31, 2018	December 25, 2018
February 1, 2018	May 31, 2018	September 11, 2018	January 1, 2019
February 16, 2018	June 1, 2018	September 17, 2018	
May 1, 2018	June 15, 2018	November 8, 2018	

**Mexico**

January 1, 2018	March 29, 2018	November 2, 2018	December 25, 2018
February 5, 2018	March 30, 2018	November 19, 2018	January 1, 2019
March 19, 2018	May 1, 2018	December 12, 2018	

**Morocco**

January 1, 2018	July 30, 2018	August 22, 2018	November 20, 2018
January 11, 2018	August 14, 2018	August 23, 2018	November 21, 2018
May 1, 2018	August 20, 2018	September 11, 2018	January 1, 2019
June 15, 2018	August 21, 2018	November 6, 2018	

**Netherlands**

January 1, 2018	April 27, 2018	May 21, 2018	January 1, 2019
March 30, 2018	May 1, 2018	December 25, 2018	
April 2, 2018	May 10, 2018	December 26, 2018	

**New Zealand**

January 1, 2018	February 6, 2018	June 4, 2018	January 1, 2019
January 2, 2018	March 30, 2018	October 22, 2018	January 2, 2019
January 22, 2018	April 2, 2018	December 25, 2018	
January 29, 2018	April 25, 2018	December 26, 2018	

**Norway**

January 1, 2018	May 1, 2018	December 24, 2018	January 1, 2019
March 29, 2018	May 10, 2018	December 25, 2018	
March 30, 2018	May 17, 2018	December 26, 2018	
April 2, 2018	May 21, 2018	December 31, 2018	

**Pakistan**

January 1, 2018	May 31, 2018	August 22, 2018	December 25, 2018
February 5, 2018	June 15, 2018	August 23, 2018	January 1, 2019
May 1, 2018	June 16, 2018	September 20, 2018	
May 6, 2018	July 2, 2018	September 21, 2018	

**Peru**

January 1, 2018	May 1, 2018	October 8, 2018	January 1, 2019
March 29, 2018	June 29, 2018	November 1, 2018	
March 30, 2018	August 30, 2018	December 25, 2018	

### **The Philippines**

January 1, 2018	June 12, 2018	November 1, 2018
March 29, 2018	June 15, 2018	November 30, 2018
March 30, 2018	August 20, 2018	December 25, 2018
April 9, 2018	August 21, 2018	December 31, 2018
May 1, 2018	August 27, 2018	January 1, 2019

### **Poland**

January 1, 2018	May 1, 2018	August 15, 2018	December 25, 2018
March 30, 2018	May 3, 2018	November 1, 2018	December 26, 2016
April 2, 2018	May 31, 2018	December 24, 2018	January 1, 2019

### **Portugal**

January 1, 2018	April 2, 2018	December 25, 2018	January 1, 2019
March 30, 2018	May 1, 2018	December 26, 2018	

### **Qatar**

January 1, 2018	March 4, 2018	August 22, 2018	December 18, 2018
February 13, 2018	June 17, 2018	August 23, 2018	January 1, 2019

### **Russia**

January 1, 2018	February 23, 2018	July 4, 2018	January 1, 2019
January 2, 2018	March 8, 2018	September 3, 2018	January 2, 2019
January 3, 2018	March 30, 2018	October 8, 2018	January 3, 2019
January 4, 2018	May 1, 2018	November 5, 2018	January 4, 2019
January 5, 2018	May 9, 2018	November 12, 2018	
January 15, 2018	May 28, 2018	November 22, 2018	
February 19, 2018	June 12, 2018	December 25, 2018	

### **Singapore**

January 1, 2018	May 1, 2018	August 9, 2018	December 25, 2018
February 16, 2018	May 29, 2018	August 22, 2018	January 1, 2019
March 30, 2018	June 15, 2018	November 7, 2018	

### **South Africa**

January 1, 2018	April 2, 2018	August 9, 2018	December 25, 2018
March 21, 2018	April 27, 2018	September 24, 2019	December 26, 2018
March 30, 2018	May 1, 2018	December 17, 2018	January 1, 2019

**South Korea**

January 1, 2018	May 7, 2018	September 24, 2018	December 25, 2018
February 15, 2018	May 22, 2018	September 25, 2018	December 31, 2018
February 16, 2018	June 6, 2018	September 26, 2018	January 1, 2019
March 1, 2018	June 13, 2018	October 3, 2018	
May 1, 2018	August 15, 2018	October 9, 2018	

**Spain**

January 1, 2018	April 2, 2018	August 15, 2018	December 26, 2018
March 19, 2018	May 1, 2018	October 12, 2018	January 1, 2019
March 29, 2018	May 31, 2018	November 1, 2018	
March 30, 2018	July 25, 2018	December 25, 2018	

**Sweden**

January 1, 2018	May 1, 2018	June 6, 2018	December 26, 2018
March 29, 2018	May 10, 2018	June 22, 2018	December 31, 2018
March 30, 2018	May 17, 2018	December 24, 2018	January 1, 2019
April 2, 2018	May 21, 2018	December 25, 2018	

**Switzerland**

January 1, 2018	April 2, 2018	May 21, 2018	December 26, 2018
January 2, 2018	May 1, 2018	August 1, 2018	January 1, 2019
March 30, 2018	May 10, 2018	December 25, 2018	January 2, 2019

**Taiwan**

January 1, 2018	February 20, 2018	May 1, 2018	December 31, 2018
February 15, 2018	February 28, 2018	June 18, 2018	January 1, 2019
February 16, 2018	April 4, 2018	September 24, 2018	
February 19, 2018	April 5, 2018	October 10, 2018	

**Thailand**

January 1, 2018	April 13, 2018	May 29, 2018	December 5, 2018
January 2, 2018	April 16, 2018	July 26, 2018	December 10, 2018
March 2, 2018	May 1, 2018	August 13, 2018	December 31, 2018
April 6, 2018	May 7, 2018	October 23, 2018	January 1, 2019

**Turkey**

January 1, 2018	June 15, 2018	August 23, 2018	January 1, 2019
-----------------	---------------	-----------------	-----------------



April 23, 2018	August 20, 2018	August 24, 2018
May 1, 2018	August 21, 2018	August 30, 2018
June 14, 2018	August 22, 2018	October 29, 2018

**United Arab Emirates**

January 1, 2018	June 15, 2018	September 3, 2018	November 30, 2018
January 15, 2018	June 17, 2018	September 11, 2018	December 2, 2018
February 19, 2018	July 4, 2018	October 8, 2018	December 3, 2018
March 30, 2018	August 21, 2018	November 12, 2018	December 21, 2018
April 13, 2018	August 22, 2018	November 20, 2018	December 25, 2018
May 28, 2018	August 23, 2018	November 22, 2018	January 1, 2019

**United States**

January 1, 2018	March 30, 2018	September 3, 2018	November 22, 2018
January 15, 2018	May 28, 2018	October 8, 2018	December 25, 2018
February 19, 2018	July 4, 2018	November 12, 2018	January 1, 2019

**Regular Holidays through December 31, 2019.**

**Australia**

January 1, 2019	April 22, 2019	October 7, 2019	January 1, 2020
January 28, 2019	April 25, 2019	November 5, 2019	
March 11, 2019	June 10, 2019	December 25, 2019	
April 19, 2019	August 5, 2019	December 26, 2019	

**Austria**

January 1, 2019	May 30, 2019	November 1, 2019	December 31, 2019
April 19, 2019	June 10, 2019	December 24, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 22, 2019	June 20, 2019	December 25, 2019	
May 1, 2019	August 15, 2019	December 26, 2019	

**Belgium**

January 1, 2019	May 1, 2019	August 15, 2019	December 25, 2019
April 19, 2019	May 30, 2019	November 1, 2019	December 26, 2019
April 22, 2019	June 10, 2019	November 11, 2019	January 1, 2020

**Brazil**

January 1, 2019	May 1, 2019	December 24, 2019
January 25, 2019	June 20, 2019	December 25, 2019

March 4, 2019	July 9, 2019	December 31, 2019
March 5, 2019	November 15, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 19, 2019	November 20, 2019	

**Britain**

January 1, 2019	May 6, 2019	June 17, 2019	December 24, 2019
January 2, 2019	May 9, 2019	June 21, 2019	December 25, 2019
January 21, 2019	May 17, 2019	July 1, 2019	December 26, 2019
January 28, 2019	May 20, 2019	July 4, 2019	December 27, 2019
February 18, 2019	May 27, 2019	August 26, 2019	December 30, 2019
March 6, 2018	May 30, 2019	September 2, 2019	December 31, 2019
April 18, 2019	May 31, 2019	October 14, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 19, 2018	June 5, 2019	November 11, 2019	January 2, 2020
April 22, 2019	June 6, 2019	November 28, 2019	
May 1, 2019	June 10, 2019	December 6, 2019	

**Canada**

January 1, 2019	June 24, 2019	October 14, 2019	January 1, 2020
February 18, 2019	July 1, 2019	November 11, 2019	
April 19, 2019	August 5, 2019	December 25, 2019	
May 20, 2019	September 2, 2019	December 26, 2019	

**Chilé**

January 1, 2019	July 16, 2019	September 20, 2019	December 31, 2019
April 19, 2019	August 15, 2019	October 31, 2019	January 1, 2020
May 1, 2019	September 18, 2019	November 1, 2019	
May 21, 2019	September 19, 2019	December 25, 2019	

**China**

January 1, 2019	April 5, 2019	July 1, 2019	October 7, 2019
February 4, 2019	April 19, 2019	September 13, 2019	December 25, 2019
February 5, 2019	April 22, 2019	October 1, 2019	December 26, 2019
February 6, 2019	May 1, 2019	October 2, 2019	January 1, 2020
February 7, 2019	May 13, 2019	October 3, 2019	
February 8, 2019	June 7, 2019	October 4, 2019	

### **Colombia**

January 1, 2019	May 1, 2019	August 19, 2019	December 31, 2019
January 7, 2019	June 3, 2019	October 14, 2019	January 1, 2020
March 25, 2019	June 24, 2019	November 4, 2019	
April 18, 2019	July 1, 2019	November 11, 2019	
April 19, 2019	August 7, 2019	December 25, 2019	

### **The Czech Republic**

January 1, 2019	May 1, 2019	October 28, 2019	December 26, 2019
April 19, 2019	May 8, 2019	December 24, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 22, 2019	July 5, 2019	December 25, 2019	

### **Denmark**

January 1, 2019	May 17, 2019	June 10, 2019	December 31, 2019
April 18, 2019	May 30, 2019	December 24, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 19, 2019	May 31, 2019	December 25, 2019	
April 22, 2019	June 5, 2019	December 26, 2019	

### **Egypt**

January 7, 2019	May 1, 2019	July 23, 2019	October 6, 2019
April 25, 2019	June 5, 2019	August 11, 2019	
April 28, 2019	June 6, 2019	August 12, 2019	
April 29, 2019	July 1, 2019	September 1, 2019	

The Egyptian market is closed every Friday.

### **Finland**

January 1, 2019	May 1, 2019	December 6, 2019	December 26, 2019
April 19, 2019	May 30, 2019	December 24, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 22, 2019	June 21, 2019	December 25, 2019	

### **France**

January 1, 2019	May 6, 2019	June 10, 2019	December 25, 2019
March 28, 2019	May 8, 2019	August 15, 2019	December 26, 2019
April 8, 2019	May 20, 2019	August 26, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 19, 2019	May 27, 2019	October 31, 2019	
April 22, 2019	May 30, 2019	November 1, 2019	
May 1, 2019	May 31, 2019	November 11, 2019	

**Germany**

January 1, 2019	May 1, 2019	October 3, 2019	December 26, 2019
March 4, 2019	May 30, 2019	November 1, 2019	December 31, 2019
April 19, 2019	June 10, 2019	December 24, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 22, 2019	June 20, 2019	December 25, 2019	

**Greece**

January 1, 2019	April 22, 2019	June 17, 2019	December 26, 2019
March 4, 2019	April 26, 2019	August 15, 2019	January 1, 2020
March 11, 2019	April 29, 2019	October 28, 2019	
March 25, 2019	May 1, 2019	December 24, 2019	
April 19, 2019	June 10, 2019	December 25, 2019	

**Hong Kong**

January 1, 2019	April 5, 2019	July 1, 2019	October 7, 2019
February 4, 2019	April 19, 2019	September 13, 2019	December 24, 2019
February 5, 2019	April 22, 2019	October 1, 2019	December 25, 2019
February 6, 2019	May 1, 2019	October 2, 2019	December 26, 2019
February 7, 2019	May 13, 2019	October 3, 2019	December 31, 2019
February 8, 2019	June 7, 2019	October 4, 2019	January 1, 2020

**Hungary**

January 1, 2019	June 10, 2019	December 24, 2019
March 15, 2019	August 19, 2019	December 25, 2019
April 19, 2019	August 20, 2019	December 26, 2019
April 22, 2019	October 23, 2019	December 27, 2019
May 1, 2019	November 1, 2019	January 1, 2020

**India**

January 26, 2019	April 17, 2019	August 19, 2019	November 9, 2019
February 19, 2019	April 19, 2019	September 2, 2019	November 12, 2019
March 4, 2019	May 1, 2019	September 10, 2019	December 25, 2019
March 21, 2019	May 18, 2019	October 2, 2019	
April 1, 2019	June 5, 2019	October 7, 2019	
April 6, 2019	August 12, 2019	October 29, 2019	
April 13, 2019	August 15, 2019	October 30, 2019	

**Indonesia**

January 1, 2019	April 19, 2019	June 5, 2019	December 31, 2019
February 5, 2019	May 1, 2019	June 6, 2019	January 1, 2020
March 7, 2019	May 20, 2019	August 12, 2019	
April 3, 2019	May 30, 2019	December 25, 2019	

**Ireland**

January 1, 2019	May 6, 2019	August 5, 2019	December 26, 2019
March 18, 2019	May 27, 2019	August 26, 2019	December 27, 2019
April 19, 2019	June 3, 2019	October 28, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 22, 2019	July 12, 2019	December 25, 2019	

**Israel**

March 21, 2019	May 28, 2019	September 20, 2019	October 21, 2019
April 8, 2019	May 29, 2019	September 30, 2019	
April 9, 2019	June 9, 2019	October 1, 2019	
April 15, 2019	July 30, 2019	October 8, 2019	
April 26, 2019	August 11, 2019	October 9, 2019	
April 29, 2019	September 18, 2019	October 10, 2019	
May 9, 2019	September 19, 2019	October 14, 2019	

The Israeli market is closed every Friday.

**Italy**

January 1, 2019	April 25, 2019	November 1, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 19, 2019	May 1, 2019	December 25, 2019	
April 22, 2019	August 15, 2019	December 26, 2019	

**Japan**

January 1, 2019	March 21, 2019	August 12, 2019	December 23, 2019
January 2, 2019	April 29, 2019	September 16, 2019	December 31, 2019
January 3, 2019	May 3, 2019	September 23, 2019	January 1, 2020
January 14, 2019	May 6, 2019	October 14, 2019	January 2, 2020
February 11, 2019	July 15, 2019	November 4, 2019	January 3, 2020

**Malaysia**

January 1, 2019	May 1, 2019	June 6, 2019	January 1, 2020
January 21, 2019	May 22, 2019	August 12, 2016	

February 1, 2019	May 30, 2019	September 16, 2019
February 5, 2019	May 31, 2019	October 29, 2019
February 6, 2019	June 5, 2019	December 25, 2019

**Mexico**

January 1, 2019	April 18, 2019	September 16, 2019	December 25, 2019
February 4, 2019	April 19, 2019	November 18, 2019	January 1, 2020
March 18, 2019	May 1, 2019	December 12, 2019	

**Morocco**

January 1, 2019	July 30, 2019	August 21, 2019
January 11, 2019	August 12, 2019	November 6, 2019
May 1, 2019	August 13, 2019	November 18, 2019
June 5, 2019	August 14, 2019	January 1, 2020
June 6, 2019	August 20, 2019	

**Netherlands**

January 1, 2019	April 30, 2019	June 10, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 19, 2019	May 1, 2019	December 25, 2019	
April 22, 2019	May 30, 2019	December 26, 2019	

**New Zealand**

January 1, 2019	February 6, 2019	June 3, 2019	January 1, 2020
January 2, 2019	April 19, 2019	October 28, 2019	January 2, 2020
January 21, 2019	April 22, 2019	December 25, 2019	
January 28, 2019	April 25, 2019	December 26, 2019	

**Norway**

January 1, 2019	May 1, 2019	June 10, 2019	December 31, 2019
April 18, 2019	May 17, 2019	December 24, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 19, 2019	May 20, 2019	December 25, 2019	
April 22, 2019	May 30, 2019	December 26, 2019	

**Pakistan**

January 1, 2019	May 31, 2019	August 12, 2019	December 25, 2019
February 5, 2019	June 5, 2019	August 14, 2019	January 1, 2020
May 1, 2019	June 6, 2019	September 10, 2019	
May 6, 2019	July 1, 2019	September 11, 2019	

**Peru**

January 1, 2019	May 1, 2019	October 8, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 18, 2019	July 29, 2019	November 1, 2019	
April 19, 2019	August 30, 2019	December 25, 2019	

**The Philippines**

January 1, 2019	May 1, 2019	August 21, 2019	December 30, 2019
April 9, 2019	June 5, 2019	August 26, 2019	December 31, 2019
April 18, 2019	June 12, 2019	November 1, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 19, 2019	August 12, 2019	December 25, 2019	

**Poland**

January 1, 2019	May 3, 2019	November 11, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 19, 2019	June 20, 2019	December 24, 2019	
April 22, 2019	August 15, 2019	December 25, 2019	
May 1, 2019	November 1, 2019	December 26, 2019	

**Portugal**

January 1, 2019	April 25, 2019	June 20, 2019	December 25, 2019
March 5, 2019	May 1, 2019	August 15, 2019	December 26, 2019
April 19, 2019	June 10, 2019	November 1, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 22, 2019	June 13, 2019	December 24, 2019	

**Qatar**

January 1, 2019	June 5, 2019	August 12, 2019	December 18, 2019
February 12, 2019	June 6, 2019	August 13, 2019	January 1, 2020
March 3, 2019	August 11, 2019	August 14, 2019	

**Russia**

January 1, 2019	February 18, 2019	June 12, 2019	November 28, 2019
January 2, 2019	March 8, 2019	July 4, 2019	December 25, 2019
January 3, 2019	April 19, 2019	September 2, 2019	January 1, 2020
January 4, 2019	May 1, 2019	October 14, 2019	January 2, 2020
January 7, 2019	May 9, 2019	November 4, 2019	January 3, 2020
January 21, 2019	May 27, 2019	November 11, 2019	January 4, 2020

**Singapore**

January 1, 2019	March 1, 2019	June 5, 2019	October 11, 2019
-----------------	---------------	--------------	------------------

February 4, 2019	April 4, 2019	June 7, 2019	October 28, 2019
February 5, 2019	April 5, 2019	August 9, 2019	December 25, 2019
February 6, 2019	April 19, 2019	August 12, 2019	January 1, 2020
February 7, 2019	May 1, 2019	September 13, 2019	
February 28, 2019	May 20, 2019	October 10, 2019	

**South Africa**

January 1, 2019	April 19, 2019	August 9, 2019	December 26, 2019
March 21, 2019	April 22, 2019	September 24, 2019	January 1, 2020
March 29, 2019	May 1, 2019	December 16, 2019	
April 1, 2019	June 17, 2019	December 25, 2019	

**South Korea**

January 1, 2019	March 1, 2019	August 15, 2019	October 9, 2019
February 4, 2019	May 1, 2019	September 12, 2019	December 25, 2019
February 5, 2019	May 6, 2019	September 13, 2019	December 31, 2019
February 6, 2019	June 6, 2019	October 3, 2019	January 1, 2020

**Spain**

January 1, 2019	May 1, 2019	June 24, 2019	November 1, 2019
March 19, 2019	May 2, 2019	July 25, 2019	December 6, 2019
April 18, 2019	May 15, 2019	August 15, 2019	December 25, 2019
April 19, 2019	June 10, 2019	September 11, 2019	December 26, 2019
April 22, 2019	June 20, 2019	September 24, 2019	January 1, 2020

**Sweden**

January 1, 2019	May 1, 2019	June 10, 2019	December 26, 2019
April 18, 2019	May 17, 2019	June 21, 2019	December 31, 2019
April 19, 2019	May 30, 2019	December 24, 2019	January 1, 2020
April 22, 2019	June 6, 2019	December 25, 2019	

**Switzerland**

January 1, 2019	May 1, 2019	December 24, 2019	January 1, 2020
January 2, 2019	May 30, 2019	December 25, 2019	
April 19, 2019	June 10, 2019	December 26, 2019	
April 22, 2019	August 1, 2019	December 31, 2019	



**Taiwan**

January 1, 2019	February 7, 2019	April 5, 2019	October 10, 2019
February 4, 2019	February 28, 2019	May 1, 2019	October 11, 2019
February 5, 2019	March 1, 2019	June 7, 2019	December 31, 2019
February 6, 2019	April 4, 2019	September 13, 2019	January 1, 2020

**Thailand**

January 1, 2019	April 16, 2019	July 1, 2019	December 5, 2019
February 19, 2019	May 1, 2019	July 15, 2019	December 10, 2019
April 8, 2019	May 6, 2019	August 12, 2019	December 31, 2019
April 15, 2019	May 20, 2019	October 23, 2019	January 1, 2020

**Turkey**

January 1, 2019	June 5, 2019	August 12, 2019	October 28, 2019
April 23, 2019	June 6, 2019	August 13, 2019	October 29, 2019
May 1, 2019	June 7, 2019	August 14, 2019	January 1, 2020
June 4, 2019	July 15, 2019	August 30, 2019	

**United Arab Emirates**

January 1, 2019	June 15, 2019	September 3, 2019	November 30, 2019
January 15, 2019	June 17, 2019	September 11, 2019	December 2, 2019
February 19, 2019	July 4, 2019	October 8, 2019	December 3, 2019
March 30, 2019	August 21, 2019	November 12, 2019	December 21, 2019
April 13, 2019	August 22, 2019	November 20, 2019	December 25, 2019
May 28, 2019	August 23, 2019	November 22, 2019	January 1, 2020

**United States**

January 1, 2019	April 19, 2019	September 2, 2019	November 28, 2019
January 21, 2019	May 27, 2019	October 14, 2019	December 25, 2019
February 18, 2019	July 4, 2019	November 11, 2019	January 1, 2020

**Redemption.** The longest redemption cycle for a Fund is a function of the longest redemption cycles among the countries whose securities comprise a Fund. Through December 31, 2018, the dates of regular holidays affecting the following securities markets present the worst-case redemption cycles\* for a Fund as follows:

Country	Trade Date	Settlement Date	Number of Days to Settle
Britain	5/4/2018	5/14/2018	10
	12/20/2018	1/3/2019	14
	12/21/2018	1/4/2019	14
China	2/13/2018	2/22/2018	9
	9/27/2018	10/8/2018	11

Country	Trade Date	Settlement Date	Number of Days to Settle
	2/14/2018	2/23/2018	9
	9/28/2018	10/9/2018	11
Egypt	8/16/2018	8/27/2018	11
	8/20/2018	8/28/2018	8
Hong Kong	2/13/2018	2/22/2018	9
	2/14/2018	2/23/2018	9
	9/27/2018	10/8/2018	11
	9/28/2018	10/9/2018	11
Israel	9/17/2018	9/25/2018	8
Japan	12/27/2018	1/4/2019	8
	12/28/2018	1/7/2019	10
Malaysia	5/25/2018	6/4/2018	10
	5/28/2018	6/5/2018	8
Morocco	8/16/2018	8/24/2018	8
	8/17/2018	8/27/2018	10
Russia	12/28/2017	1/8/2018	11
	12/29/2017	1/9/2018	11
	12/28/2018	1/7/2019	10
	12/31/2018	1/8/2019	8
Taiwan	2/13/2018	2/21/2018	8
	2/14/2018	2/22/2018	8
Turkey	8/16/2018	8/27/2018	11
	8/17/2018	8/28/2018	11
United Arab Emirates	8/16/2018	8/27/2018	11
	8/20/2018	8/28/2018	8

\* These worst-case redemption cycles are based on information regarding regular holidays, which may be out of date. Based on changes in holidays, longer (worse) redemption cycles are possible.

**Redemption.** The longest redemption cycle for a Fund is a function of the longest redemption cycles among the countries whose securities comprise a Fund. Through December 31, 2019, the dates of regular holidays affecting the following securities markets present the worst-case redemption cycles\* for a Fund as follows:

Country	Trade Date	Settlement Date	Number of Days to Settle
Britain	12/20/2019	1/3/2020	14
	12/23/2019	1/6/2020	14
China	1/31/2019	2/11/2019	11
	2/1/2019	2/12/2019	11
	9/27/2019	10/8/2019	11
	9/30/2019	10/9/2019	9
Egypt	4/24/2019	5/2/2019	8
Hong Kong	1/31/2019	2/11/2019	11
	9/27/2019	10/8/2019	11
	2/1/2019	2/12/2019	11
	9/30/2019	10/9/2019	9
Hungary	12/23/2019	12/31/2019	8
	12/20/2019	12/30/2019	10
Israel	10/3/2019	10/15/2019	12
	10/7/2019	10/16/2019	9
Qatar	8/9/2019	8/19/2019	10
	8/8/2019	8/19/2019	11
	8/7/2019	8/15/2019	8
Russia	12/28/2018	1/8/2019	11
	12/31/2018	1/9/2019	9
Singapore	1/31/2019	2/8/2019	8
	2/1/2019	2/11/2019	10

<b>Country</b>	<b>Trade Date</b>	<b>Settlement Date</b>	<b>Number of Days to Settle</b>
Taiwan	1/31/2019	2/8/2019	8
	2/1/2019	2/11/2019	10
Turkey	5/31/2019	6/10/2019	10
	6/3/2019	6/11/2019	8

\* These worst-case redemption cycles are based on information regarding regular holidays, which may be out of date. Based on changes in holidays, longer (worse) redemption cycles are possible.

## APPENDIX B

As stated in the Prospectus, the FlexShares Core Select Bond Fund may enter into certain futures transactions. Some of these transactions are described in this Appendix. The Fund may also enter into other futures transactions or other securities and instruments that are available in the markets from time to time.

### I. Index and Security Futures Contracts

A stock index assigns relative values to the stocks included in the index, which fluctuates with changes in the market values of the stocks included. Some stock index futures contracts are based on broad market indexes, such as the S&P 500 or the New York Stock Exchange Composite Index. In contrast, certain futures contracts relate to narrower market indexes, such as the S&P 100® or indexes based on an industry or market segment, such as oil and gas stocks. Since 2001, trading has been permitted in futures based on a single stock and on narrow-based security indexes (as defined in the Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000) (together “security futures”; broader-based index futures are referred to as “index futures”). Some futures contracts are traded on organized exchanges regulated by the CFTC. These exchanges may be either designated by the CFTC as a contract market or registered with the CFTC as a Derivatives Transaction Execution Facility (DTEF). Transactions on such exchanges are cleared through a clearing corporation, which guarantees the performance of the parties to each contract. Futures contracts also may be traded on electronic trading facilities or over-the-counter. These various trading facilities are licensed and/or regulated by varying degrees by the CFTC. To the extent consistent with its investment objective, the Fund may also engage in transactions, from time to time, in foreign stock index futures such as the ALL-ORDS (Australia), CAC40 (France), TOPIX (Japan) and the FTSE-100 (United Kingdom).

### II. Margin Payments

Unlike purchases or sales of portfolio securities, no price is paid or received by the Fund upon the purchase or sale of a futures contract. Initially, the Fund will be required to deposit with the broker or in a segregated account with a custodian or sub-custodian an amount of liquid assets, known as initial margin, based on the value of the contract. The nature of initial margin in futures transactions is different from that of margin in security transactions in that futures contract margin does not involve the borrowing of funds by the customer to finance the transactions. Rather, the initial margin is in the nature of a performance bond or good faith deposit on the contract, which is returned to the Fund upon termination of the futures contract assuming all contractual obligations have been satisfied. Subsequent payments, called variation margin, to and from the broker, will be made on a daily basis as the price of the underlying instruments fluctuates making the long and short positions in the futures contract more or less valuable, a process known as “marking-to-market.” For example, when the Fund has purchased a futures contract and the price of the contract has risen in response to a rise in the underlying instruments, that position will have increased in value and the Fund will be entitled to receive from the broker a variation margin payment equal to that increase in value. Conversely, where the Fund has purchased a futures contract and the price of the future contract has declined in response to a decrease in the underlying instruments, the position would be less valuable and the Fund would be required to make a variation margin payment to the broker. Prior to expiration of the futures contract, the Investment Adviser may elect to close the position by taking an opposite position, subject to the availability of a secondary market, which will operate to terminate the Fund’s position in the futures contract. A final determination of variation margin is then made, additional cash is required to be paid by or released to the Fund, and the Fund realizes a loss or gain.

### III. Risks of Transactions in Futures Contracts

There are several risks in connection with the use of futures by the Fund, even for futures that are used for hedging (non-speculative) purposes. One risk arises because of the imperfect correlation between movements in the price of the futures and movements in the price of the instruments which are the subject of the hedge. The price of the future may move more than or less than the price of the instruments being hedged. If the price of the futures moves less than the price of the instruments which are the subject of the hedge, the hedge will not be fully effective but, if the price of the instruments being hedged has moved in an unfavorable direction, the Fund would be in a better position than if it had not hedged at all. If the price of the instruments being hedged has moved in a favorable direction, this advantage will be partially offset by the loss on the futures. If the price of the futures moves more than the price of the hedged instruments, the Fund involved will experience either a loss or gain on the futures which will not be completely offset by movements in the price of the instruments that are the subject of the hedge. To compensate for the imperfect correlation of movements in the price of instruments being hedged and movements in the price of futures contracts, the Fund may buy or sell futures contracts in a greater dollar amount than the dollar amount of instruments being hedged if the volatility over a particular time period of the prices of such instruments has been greater than the volatility over such

time period of the futures, or if otherwise deemed to be appropriate by the Investment Adviser. Conversely, the Fund may buy or sell fewer futures contracts if the volatility over a particular time period of the prices of the instruments being hedged is less than the volatility over such time period of the futures contract being used, or if otherwise deemed to be appropriate by the Investment Adviser.

In addition to the possibility that there may be an imperfect correlation, or no correlation at all, between movements in the futures and the instruments being hedged, the price of futures may not correlate perfectly with movement in the cash market due to certain market distortions. Rather than meeting additional margin deposit requirements, investors may close futures contracts through off-setting transactions which could distort the normal relationship between the cash and futures markets. Second, with respect to financial futures contracts, the liquidity of the futures market depends on participants entering into off-setting transactions rather than making or taking delivery. To the extent participants decide to make or take delivery, liquidity in the futures market could be reduced thus producing distortions. Third, from the point of view of speculators, the deposit requirements in the futures market are less onerous than margin requirements in the securities market. Therefore, increased participation by speculators in the futures market may also cause temporary price distortions. Due to the possibility of price distortion in the futures market, and because of the imperfect correlation between the movements in the cash market and movements in the price of futures, a correct forecast of general market trends or interest rate movements by the Investment Adviser may still not result in a successful hedging transaction over a short time frame.

In general, positions in futures may be closed out only on an exchange, board of trade or other trading facility, which provides a secondary market for such futures. Although the Fund intend to purchase or sell futures only on trading facilities where there appear to be active secondary markets, there is no assurance that a liquid secondary market on any trading facility will exist for any particular contract or at any particular time. In such an event, it may not be possible to close a futures investment position, and in the event of adverse price movements, the Fund would continue to be required to make daily cash payments of variation margin. However, in the event futures contracts have been used to hedge portfolio securities, such securities will not be sold until the futures contract can be terminated. In such circumstances, an increase in the price of the securities, if any, may partially or completely offset losses on the futures contract. However, as described above, there is no guarantee that the price of the securities will in fact correlate with the price movements in the futures contract and thus provide an offset on a futures contract.

Further, it should be noted that the liquidity of a secondary market in a futures contract may be adversely affected by "daily price fluctuation limits" established by commodity exchanges which limit the amount of fluctuation in a futures contract price during a single trading day. Once the daily limit has been reached in the contract, no trades may be entered into at a price beyond the limit, thus preventing the liquidation of open futures positions. The trading of futures contracts is also subject to the risk of trading halts, suspensions, exchange or clearing house equipment failures, government intervention, insolvency of a brokerage firm or clearing house or other disruptions of normal trading activity, which could at times make it difficult or impossible to liquidate existing positions or to recover excess variation margin payments.

Successful use of futures by Fund is also subject to the Investment Adviser's ability to predict correctly movements in the direction of the market. In addition, in such situations, if the Fund has insufficient cash, it may have to sell securities to meet daily variation margin requirements. Such sales of securities may be, but will not necessarily be, at increased prices which reflect the rising market. The Fund may have to sell securities at a time when it may be disadvantageous to do so.

Futures purchased or sold by the Fund (and related options) may be traded on foreign exchanges. Participation in foreign futures and foreign options transactions involves the execution and clearing of trades on or subject to the rules of a foreign board of trade. Neither the National Futures Association nor any domestic exchange regulates activities of any foreign boards of trade, including the execution, delivery and clearing of transactions, or has the power to compel enforcement of the rules of a foreign board of trade or any applicable foreign law. This is true even if the exchange is formally linked to a domestic market so that a position taken on the market may be liquidated by a transaction on another market. Moreover, such laws or regulations will vary depending on the foreign country in which the foreign futures or foreign options transaction occurs. For these reasons, customers who trade foreign futures or foreign options contracts may not be afforded certain of the protective measures provided by the Commodity Exchange Act, the CFTC regulations and the rules of the National Futures Association and any domestic exchange or other trading facility (including the right to use reparations proceedings before the CFTC and arbitration proceedings provided by the National Futures Association or any domestic futures exchange), nor the protective measures provided by the Securities and Exchange Commission's rules relating to security futures. In particular, the investments of the Fund in foreign futures, or foreign options transactions may not be provided the same protections in respect to transactions on United States futures trading facilities. In addition, the price of any foreign futures or foreign options contract may be affected by any variance in the foreign exchange rate between the time an order is placed and the time it is liquidated, offset or exercised.

#### **IV. Options on Futures Contracts**

The Fund may purchase and write options on the futures contracts described above. A futures option gives the holder, in return for the premium paid, the right to buy (call) from or sell (put) to the writer of the option of a futures contract at a specified price at any time during the period of the option. Upon exercise, the writer of the option is obligated to pay the difference between the cash value of the futures contract and the exercise price. Like the buyer or seller of a futures contract, the holder, or writer, of an option has the right to terminate its position prior to the scheduled expiration of the option by selling, or purchasing an option of the same series, at which time the person entering into the closing transaction will realize a gain or loss. A Fund will be required to deposit initial margin and variation margin with respect to put and call options on futures contracts written by it pursuant to brokers' requirements similar to those described above. Net option premiums received will be included as initial margin deposits.

Investments in futures options involve some of the same considerations that are involved in connection with investments in futures contracts (for example, the existence of a liquid secondary market). See "Risks of Transactions in Futures Contracts" above. In addition, the purchase or sale of an option also entails the risk that changes in the value of the underlying futures contract will not correspond to changes in the value of the option purchased. Depending on the pricing of the option compared to either the futures contract upon which it is based, or upon the price of the securities being hedged, an option may or may not be less risky than ownership of the futures contract or such securities. In general, the market prices of options can be expected to be more volatile than the market prices on the underlying futures contract. Compared to the purchase or sale of futures contracts, however, the purchase of call or put options on futures contracts may frequently involve less potential risk to the Fund because the maximum amount at risk is the premium paid for the options (plus transaction costs). The writing of an option on a futures contract involves risks similar to those risks relating to the sale of futures contracts.

#### **V. Other Matters**

The Fund intends to comply with the regulations of the CFTC exempting it from registration as a "Commodity Pool Operator". The Fund are operated by persons who have claimed an exclusion from the definition of the term "Commodity Pool Operator" with respect to the Fund under the Commodity Exchange Act and, therefore, are not subject to registration or regulations as a pool operator with respect to the Fund under such Act. In order to continue to claim exclusion from registration as a "commodity pool operator" with respect to the Fund, the Fund is limited in its ability to use futures, options and swaps subject to regulation under the CEA for purposes other than bona fide hedging, which is narrowly defined. With respect to transactions other than for bona fide hedging purposes, either: (1) the aggregate initial margin and premiums required to establish the Fund's positions in such investments may not exceed 5% of the liquidation value of the Fund's assets (after accounting for unrealized profits and unrealized losses on any such investments), or (2) the aggregate net notional value of such instruments may not exceed 100% of the liquidation value of the Fund's assets (after accounting for unrealized profits and unrealized losses on any such positions). In addition to meeting one of the foregoing trading limitations, the Fund may not market itself as a commodity pool or otherwise as a vehicle for trading in the futures, options or swaps markets. Accounting for futures contracts will be in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

## APPENDIX C

### DESCRIPTION OF SECURITIES RATINGS

#### Short-Term Credit Ratings

An *S&P Global Ratings* short-term issue credit rating is a forward-looking opinion about the creditworthiness of an obligor with respect to a specific financial obligation having an original maturity of no more than 365 days. The following summarizes the rating categories used by S&P Global Ratings for short-term issues:

“A-1” – A short-term obligation rated “A-1” is rated in the highest category by S&P Global Ratings. The obligor’s capacity to meet its financial commitments on the obligation is strong. Within this category, certain obligations are designated with a plus sign (+). This indicates that the obligor’s capacity to meet its financial commitment on these obligations is extremely strong.

“A-2” – A short-term obligation rated “A-2” is somewhat more susceptible to the adverse effects of changes in circumstances and economic conditions than obligations in higher rating categories. However, the obligor’s capacity to meet its financial commitments on the obligation is satisfactory.

“A-3” – A short-term obligation rated “A-3” exhibits adequate protection parameters. However, adverse economic conditions or changing circumstances are more likely to weaken an obligor’s capacity to meet its financial commitments on the obligation.

“B” – A short-term obligation rated “B” is regarded as vulnerable and has significant speculative characteristics. The obligor currently has the capacity to meet its financial commitments; however, it faces major ongoing uncertainties that could lead to the obligor’s inadequate capacity to meet its financial commitments.

“C” – A short-term obligation rated “C” is currently vulnerable to nonpayment and is dependent upon favorable business, financial, and economic conditions for the obligor to meet its financial commitments on the obligation.

“D” – A short-term obligation rated “D” is in default or in breach of an imputed promise. For non-hybrid capital instruments, the “D” rating category is used when payments on an obligation are not made on the date due, unless S&P Global Ratings believes that such payments will be made within any stated grace period. However, any stated grace period longer than five business days will be treated as five business days. The “D” rating also will be used upon the filing of a bankruptcy petition or the taking of a similar action and where default on an obligation is a virtual certainty, for example due to automatic stay provisions. An obligation’s rating is lowered to “D” if it is subject to a distressed exchange offer.

Local Currency and Foreign Currency Ratings – S&P Global Ratings’ issuer credit ratings make a distinction between foreign currency ratings and local currency ratings. An issuer’s foreign currency rating will differ from its local currency rating when the obligor has a different capacity to meet its obligations denominated in its local currency, vs. obligations denominated in a foreign currency.

*Moody’s Investors Service (“Moody’s”)* short-term ratings are forward-looking opinions of the relative credit risks of financial obligations with an original maturity of thirteen months or less and reflect both on the likelihood of a default on contractually promised payments and the expected financial loss suffered in the event of default.

Moody’s employs the following designations to indicate the relative repayment ability of rated issuers:

“P-1” – Issuers (or supporting institutions) rated Prime-1 have a superior ability to repay short-term debt obligations.

“P-2” – Issuers (or supporting institutions) rated Prime-2 have a strong ability to repay short-term debt obligations.

“P-3” – Issuers (or supporting institutions) rated Prime-3 have an acceptable ability to repay short-term obligations.

“NP” – Issuers (or supporting institutions) rated Not Prime do not fall within any of the Prime rating categories.

“NR” – Is assigned to an unrated issuer.

*Fitch, Inc. / Fitch Ratings Ltd. (“Fitch”)* short-term issuer or obligation rating is based in all cases on the short-term vulnerability to default of the rated entity and relates to the capacity to meet financial obligations in accordance with the documentation governing the relevant obligation. Short-term ratings are assigned to obligations whose initial maturity is viewed as “short-term” based on market convention. Typically, this means up to 13 months for corporate, sovereign, and structured

obligations and up to 36 months for obligations in U.S. public finance markets. The following summarizes the rating categories used by Fitch for short-term obligations:

“F1” – Securities possess the highest short-term credit quality. This designation indicates the strongest intrinsic capacity for timely payment of financial commitments; may have an added “+” to denote any exceptionally strong credit feature.

“F2” – Securities possess good short-term credit quality. This designation indicates good intrinsic capacity for timely payment of financial commitments.

“F3” – Securities possess fair short-term credit quality. This designation indicates that the intrinsic capacity for timely payment of financial commitments is adequate.

“B” – Securities possess speculative short-term credit quality. This designation indicates minimal capacity for timely payment of financial commitments, plus heightened vulnerability to near term adverse changes in financial and economic conditions.

“C” – Securities possess high short-term default risk. Default is a real possibility.

“RD” – Restricted default. Indicates an entity that has defaulted on one or more of its financial commitments, although it continues to meet other financial obligations. Typically applicable to entity ratings only.

“D” – Default. Indicates a broad-based default event for an entity, or the default of a short-term obligation.

Plus (+) or minus (-) – The “F1” rating may be modified by the addition of a plus (+) or minus (-) sign to show the relative status within that major rating category.

“NR” – Is assigned to an unrated issue of a rated issuer.

The *DBRS® Ratings Limited* (“*DBRS*”) short-term debt rating scale provides an opinion on the risk that an issuer will not meet its short-term financial obligations in a timely manner. Ratings are based on quantitative and qualitative considerations relevant to the issuer and the relative ranking of claims. The R-1 and R-2 rating categories are further denoted by the sub-categories “(high)”, “(middle)”, and “(low)”.

The following summarizes the ratings used by DBRS for commercial paper and short-term debt:

“R-1 (high)” - Short-term debt rated “R-1 (high)” is of the highest credit quality. The capacity for the payment of short-term financial obligations as they fall due is exceptionally high. Unlikely to be adversely affected by future events.

“R-1 (middle)” - Short-term debt rated “R-1 (middle)” is of superior credit quality. The capacity for the payment of short-term financial obligations as they fall due is very high. Differs from “R-1 (high)” by a relatively modest degree. Unlikely to be significantly vulnerable to future events.

“R-1 (low)” - Short-term debt rated “R-1 (low)” is of good credit quality. The capacity for the payment of short-term financial obligations as they fall due is substantial. Overall strength is not as favorable as higher rating categories. May be vulnerable to future events, but qualifying negative factors are considered manageable.

“R-2 (high)” – Short-term debt rated “R-2 (high)” is considered to be at the upper end of adequate credit quality. The capacity for the payment of short-term financial obligations as they fall due is acceptable. May be vulnerable to future events.

“R-2 (middle)” – Short-term debt rated “R-2 (middle)” is considered to be of adequate credit quality. The capacity for the payment of short-term financial obligations as they fall due is acceptable. May be vulnerable to future events or may be exposed to other factors that could reduce credit quality.

“R-2 (low)” – Short-term debt rated “R-2 (low)” is considered to be at the lower end of adequate credit quality. The capacity for the payment of short-term financial obligations as they fall due is acceptable. May be vulnerable to future events. A number of challenges are present that could affect the issuer’s ability to meet such obligations.

“R-3” – Short-term debt rated “R-3” is considered to be at the lowest end of adequate credit quality. There is a capacity for the payment of short-term financial obligations as they fall due. May be vulnerable to future events and the certainty of meeting such obligations could be impacted by a variety of developments.



“R-4” – Short-term debt rated “R-4” is considered to be of speculative credit quality. The capacity for the payment of short-term financial obligations as they fall due is uncertain.

“R-5” – Short-term debt rated “R-5” is considered to be of highly speculative credit quality. There is a high level of uncertainty as to the capacity to meet short-term financial obligations as they fall due.

“D” – Short-term debt rated “D” is assigned when the issuer has filed under any applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or winding up statute or there is a failure to satisfy an obligation after the exhaustion of grace periods, a downgrade to “D” may occur. DBRS may also use “SD” (Selective Default) in cases where only some securities are impacted, such as the case of a “distressed exchange”.

## **Long-Term Credit Ratings**

The following summarizes the ratings used by *S&P Global Ratings* for long-term issues:

“AAA” – An obligation rated “AAA” has the highest rating assigned by S&P Global Ratings. The obligor’s capacity to meet its financial commitments on the obligation is extremely strong.

“AA” – An obligation rated “AA” differs from the highest-rated obligations only to a small degree. The obligor’s capacity to meet its financial commitments on the obligation is very strong.

“A” – An obligation rated “A” is somewhat more susceptible to the adverse effects of changes in circumstances and economic conditions than obligations in higher-rated categories. However, the obligor’s capacity to meet its financial commitments on the obligation is still strong.

“BBB” – An obligation rated “BBB” exhibits adequate protection parameters. However, adverse economic conditions or changing circumstances are more likely to weaken the obligor’s capacity to meet its financial commitments on the obligation.

“BB,” “B,” “CCC,” “CC” and “C” – Obligations rated “BB,” “B,” “CCC,” “CC” and “C” are regarded as having significant speculative characteristics. “BB” indicates the least degree of speculation and “C” the highest. While such obligations will likely have some quality and protective characteristics, these may be outweighed by large uncertainties or major exposure to adverse conditions.

“BB” – An obligation rated “BB” is less vulnerable to nonpayment than other speculative issues. However, it faces major ongoing uncertainties or exposure to adverse business, financial, or economic conditions that could lead to the obligor’s inadequate capacity to meet its financial commitments on the obligation.

“B” – An obligation rated “B” is more vulnerable to nonpayment than obligations rated “BB”, but the obligor currently has the capacity to meet its financial commitments on the obligation. Adverse business, financial, or economic conditions will likely impair the obligor’s capacity or willingness to meet its financial commitments on the obligation.

“CCC” – An obligation rated “CCC” is currently vulnerable to nonpayment and is dependent upon favorable business, financial, and economic conditions for the obligor to meet its financial commitments on the obligation. In the event of adverse business, financial, or economic conditions, the obligor is not likely to have the capacity to meet its financial commitments on the obligation.

“CC” – An obligation rated “CC” is currently highly vulnerable to nonpayment. The “CC” rating is used when a default has not yet occurred, but S&P Global Ratings expects default to be a virtual certainty, regardless of the anticipated time to default.

“C” – An obligation rated “C” is currently highly vulnerable to nonpayment, and the obligation is expected to have lower relative seniority or lower ultimate recovery compared with obligations that are rated higher.

“D” – An obligation rated “D” is in default or in breach of an imputed promise. For non-hybrid capital instruments, the “D” rating category is used when payments on an obligation are not made on the date due, unless S&P Global Ratings believes that such payments will be made within five business days in the absence of a stated grace period or within the earlier of the stated grace period or 30 calendar days. The “D” rating also will be used upon the filing of a bankruptcy petition or the taking of similar action and where default on an obligation is a virtual certainty, for example due to automatic stay provisions. An obligation’s rating is lowered to “D” if it is subject to a distressed exchange offer.

Plus (+) or minus (-) – The ratings from “AA” to “CCC” may be modified by the addition of a plus (+) or minus (-) sign to show relative standing within the major rating categories.

“NR” – This indicates that no rating has been requested, or that there is insufficient information on which to base a rating, or that S&P Global Ratings does not rate a particular obligation as a matter of policy.

Local Currency and Foreign Currency Risks - S&P Global Ratings’ issuer credit ratings make a distinction between foreign currency ratings and local currency ratings. An issuer’s foreign currency rating will differ from its local currency rating when the obligor has a different capacity to meet its obligations denominated in its local currency, vs. obligations denominated in a foreign currency.

**Moody’s** long-term ratings are forward-looking opinions of the relative credit risks of financial obligations with an original maturity of one year or more. Such ratings reflect both on the likelihood of default on contractually promised payments and the expected financial loss suffered in the event of default. The following summarizes the ratings used by Moody’s for long-term debt:

“Aaa” – Obligations rated “Aaa” are judged to be of the highest quality, subject to the lowest level of credit risk.

“Aa” – Obligations rated “Aa” are judged to be of high quality and are subject to very low credit risk.

“A” – Obligations rated “A” are judged to be upper-medium grade and are subject to low credit risk.

“Baa” – Obligations rated “Baa” are judged to be medium-grade and subject to moderate credit risk and as such may possess certain speculative characteristics.

“Ba” – Obligations rated “Ba” are judged to be speculative and are subject to substantial credit risk.

“B” – Obligations rated “B” are considered speculative and are subject to high credit risk.

“Caa” – Obligations rated “Caa” are judged to be speculative of poor standing and are subject to very high credit risk.

“Ca” – Obligations rated “Ca” are highly speculative and are likely in, or very near, default, with some prospect of recovery of principal and interest.

“C” – Obligations rated “C” are the lowest rated and are typically in default, with little prospect for recovery of principal or interest.

Note: Moody’s appends numerical modifiers 1, 2, and 3 to each generic rating classification from “Aa” through “Caa.” The modifier 1 indicates that the obligation ranks in the higher end of its generic rating category; the modifier 2 indicates a mid-range ranking; and the modifier 3 indicates a ranking in the lower end of that generic rating category.

“NR” – Is assigned to unrated obligations.

The following summarizes long-term ratings used by **Fitch**:

“AAA” – Securities considered to be of the highest credit quality. “AAA” ratings denote the lowest expectation of credit risk. They are assigned only in cases of exceptionally strong capacity for payment of financial commitments. This capacity is highly unlikely to be adversely affected by foreseeable events.

“AA” – Securities considered to be of very high credit quality. “AA” ratings denote expectations of very low credit risk. They indicate very strong capacity for payment of financial commitments. This capacity is not significantly vulnerable to foreseeable events.

“A” – Securities considered to be of high credit quality. “A” ratings denote expectations of low credit risk. The capacity for payment of financial commitments is considered strong. This capacity may, nevertheless, be more vulnerable to adverse business or economic conditions than is the case for higher ratings.

“BBB” – Securities considered to be of good credit quality. “BBB” ratings indicate that expectations of credit risk are currently low. The capacity for payment of financial commitments is considered adequate, but adverse business or economic conditions are more likely to impair this capacity.

“BB” – Securities considered to be speculative. “BB” ratings indicate that there is an elevated vulnerability to credit risk, particularly in the event of adverse changes in business or economic conditions over time; however, business or financial alternatives may be available to allow financial commitments to be met.

“B” – Securities considered to be highly speculative. “B” ratings indicate that material credit risk is present.

“CCC” – A “CCC” rating indicates that substantial credit risk is present.

“CC” – A “CC” rating indicates very high levels of credit risk.

“C” – A “C” rating indicates exceptionally high levels of credit risk.

Defaulted obligations typically are not assigned “RD” or “D” ratings but are instead rated in the “B” to “C” rating categories, depending on their recovery prospects and other relevant characteristics. Fitch believes that this approach better aligns obligations that have comparable overall expected loss but varying vulnerability to default and loss.

Plus (+) or minus (-) may be appended to a rating to denote relative status within major rating categories. Such suffixes are not added to the “AAA” obligation rating category, or to corporate finance obligation ratings in the categories below “CCC”.

“NR” – Is assigned to an unrated issue of a rated issuer.

The **DBRS** long-term rating scale provides an opinion on the risk of default. That is, the risk that an issuer will fail to satisfy its financial obligations in accordance with the terms under which an obligation has been issued. Ratings are based on quantitative and qualitative considerations relevant to the issuer, and the relative ranking of claims. All rating categories other than AAA and D also contain subcategories “(high)” and “(low)”. The absence of either a “(high)” or “(low)” designation indicates the rating is in the middle of the category. The following summarizes the ratings used by DBRS for long-term debt:

“AAA” – Long-term debt rated “AAA” is of the highest credit quality. The capacity for the payment of financial obligations is exceptionally high and unlikely to be adversely affected by future events.

“AA” – Long-term debt rated “AA” is of superior credit quality. The capacity for the payment of financial obligations is considered high. Credit quality differs from “AAA” only to a small degree. Unlikely to be significantly vulnerable to future events.

“A” – Long-term debt rated “A” is of good credit quality. The capacity for the payment of financial obligations is substantial, but of lesser credit quality than “AA.” May be vulnerable to future events, but qualifying negative factors are considered manageable.

“BBB” – Long-term debt rated “BBB” is of adequate credit quality. The capacity for the payment of financial obligations is considered acceptable. May be vulnerable to future events.

“BB” – Long-term debt rated “BB” is of speculative, non-investment grade credit quality. The capacity for the payment of financial obligations is uncertain. Vulnerable to future events.

“B” – Long-term debt rated “B” is of highly speculative credit quality. There is a high level of uncertainty as to the capacity to meet financial obligations.

“CCC”, “CC” and “C” – Long-term debt rated in any of these categories is of very highly speculative credit quality. In danger of defaulting on financial obligations. There is little difference between these three categories, although “CC” and “C” ratings are normally applied to obligations that are seen as highly likely to default, or subordinated to obligations rated in the “CCC” to “B” range. Obligations in respect of which default has not technically taken place but is considered inevitable may be rated in the “C” category.

“D” – A security rated “D” is assigned when the issuer has filed under any applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or winding up statute or there is a failure to satisfy an obligation after the exhaustion of grace periods, a downgrade to “D” may occur. DBRS may also use “SD” (Selective Default) in cases where only some securities are impacted, such as the case of a “distressed exchange”.

### **Municipal Note Ratings**

An **S&P Global Ratings** U.S. municipal note rating reflects S&P Global Ratings’ opinion about the liquidity factors and market access risks unique to the notes. Notes due in three years or less will likely receive a note rating. Notes with an original

maturity of more than three years will most likely receive a long-term debt rating. In determining which type of rating, if any, to assign, S&P Global Ratings' analysis will review the following considerations:

- Amortization schedule - the larger the final maturity relative to other maturities, the more likely it will be treated as a note; and
- Source of payment - the more dependent the issue is on the market for its refinancing, the more likely it will be treated as a note.

Municipal Short-Term Note rating symbols are as follows:

“SP-1” – A municipal note rated “SP-1” exhibits a strong capacity to pay principal and interest. An issue determined to possess a very strong capacity to pay debt service is given a plus (+) designation.

“SP-2” – A municipal note rated “SP-2” exhibits a satisfactory capacity to pay principal and interest, with some vulnerability to adverse financial and economic changes over the term of the notes.

“SP-3” – A municipal note rated “SP-3” exhibits a speculative capacity to pay principal and interest.

Moody's uses the Municipal Investment Grade (“MIG”) scale to rate U.S. municipal bond anticipation notes of up to three years maturity. Municipal notes rated on the MIG scale may be secured by either pledged revenues or proceeds of a take-out financing received prior to note maturity. MIG ratings expire at the maturity of the obligation, and the issuer's long-term rating is only one consideration in assigning the MIG rating. MIG ratings are divided into three levels – “MIG-1” through “MIG-3” while speculative grade short-term obligations are designated “SG”. The following summarizes the ratings used by Moody's for short-term municipal obligations:

“MIG-1” – This designation denotes superior credit quality. Excellent protection is afforded by established cash flows, highly reliable liquidity support, or demonstrated broad-based access to the market for refinancing.

“MIG-2” – This designation denotes strong credit quality. Margins of protection are ample, although not as large as in the preceding group.

“MIG-3” – This designation denotes acceptable credit quality. Liquidity and cash-flow protection may be narrow, and market access for refinancing is likely to be less well-established.

“SG” – This designation denotes speculative-grade credit quality. Debt instruments in this category may lack sufficient margins of protection.

“NR” – Is assigned to an unrated obligation.

In the case of variable rate demand obligations (“VRDOs”), a two-component rating is assigned: a long or short-term debt rating and a demand obligation rating. The first element represents Moody's evaluation of risk associated with scheduled principal and interest payments. The second element represents Moody's evaluation of risk associated with the ability to receive purchase price upon demand (“demand feature”). The second element uses a rating from a variation of the MIG scale called the Variable Municipal Investment Grade or “VMIG” scale. The rating transitions on the VMIG scale differ from those on the Prime scale to reflect the risk that external liquidity support generally will terminate if the issuer's long-term rating drops below investment grade.

“VMIG-1” – This designation denotes superior credit quality. Excellent protection is afforded by the superior short-term credit strength of the liquidity provider and structural and legal protections that ensure the timely payment of purchase price upon demand.

“VMIG-2” – This designation denotes strong credit quality. Good protection is afforded by the strong short-term credit strength of the liquidity provider and structural and legal protections that ensure the timely payment of purchase price upon demand.

“VMIG-3” – This designation denotes acceptable credit quality. Adequate protection is afforded by the satisfactory short-term credit strength of the liquidity provider and structural and legal protections that ensure the timely payment of purchase price upon demand.

“SG” – This designation denotes speculative-grade credit quality. Demand features rated in this category may be supported by a liquidity provider that does not have an investment grade short-term rating or may lack the structural and/or legal protections necessary to ensure the timely payment of purchase price upon demand.

“NR” – Is assigned to an unrated obligation.

### **About Credit Ratings**

An S&P Global Ratings issue credit rating is a forward-looking opinion about the creditworthiness of an obligor with respect to a specific financial obligation, a specific class of financial obligations, or a specific financial program (including ratings on medium-term note programs and commercial paper programs). It takes into consideration the creditworthiness of guarantors, insurers, or other forms of credit enhancement on the obligation and takes into account the currency in which the obligation is denominated. The opinion reflects S&P Global Ratings’ view of the obligor’s capacity and willingness to meet its financial commitments as they come due, and this opinion may assess terms, such as collateral security and subordination, which could affect ultimate payment in the event of default.

Moody’s credit ratings must be construed solely as statements of opinion and not statements of fact or recommendations to purchase, sell or hold any securities.

Fitch’s credit ratings provide an opinion on the relative ability of an entity to meet financial commitments, such as interest, preferred dividends, repayment of principal, insurance claims or counterparty obligations. Fitch credit ratings are used by investors as indications of the likelihood of receiving the money owed to them in accordance with the terms on which they invested. Fitch’s credit ratings cover the global spectrum of corporate, sovereign financial, bank, insurance, and public finance entities (including supranational and sub-national entities) and the securities or other obligations they issue, as well as structured finance securities backed by receivables or other financial assets.

Credit ratings provided by DBRS are forward-looking opinions about credit risk which reflect the creditworthiness of an issuer, rated entity, and/or security. Credit ratings are not statements of fact. While historical statistics and performance can be important considerations, credit ratings are not based solely on such; they include subjective considerations and involve expectations for future performance that cannot be guaranteed. To the extent that future events and economic conditions do not match expectations, credit ratings assigned to issuers and/or securities can change. Credit ratings are also based on approved and applicable methodologies, models and criteria (“Methodologies”), which are periodically updated and when material changes are deemed necessary, this may also lead to rating changes.

Credit ratings typically provide an opinion on the risk that investors may not be repaid in accordance with the terms under which the obligation was issued. In some cases, credit ratings may also include consideration for the relative ranking of claims and recovery, should default occur. Credit ratings are meant to provide opinions on relative measures of risk and are not based on expectations of any specific default probability, nor are they meant to predict such.

The data and information on which DBRS bases its opinions is not audited or verified by DBRS, although DBRS conducts a reasonableness review of information received and relied upon in accordance with its Methodologies and policies.

DBRS uses rating symbols as a concise method of expressing its opinion to the market, but there are a limited number of rating categories for the possible slight risk differentials that exist across the rating spectrum and DBRS does not assert that credit ratings in the same category are of “exactly” the same quality.